This publication is available at the Army Publishing Directorate site (http://armypubs.army.mil), and the Central Army Registry site (https://atiam.train.army.mil/catalog/dashboard)
# Aeromedical Training for Flight Personnel

1. Change TC 3-04.93, 01 August 2018, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remove old pages</th>
<th>Insert new pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i through iv</td>
<td>I through iv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2 through 1-5</td>
<td>1-2 through 1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-3 and 4-4</td>
<td>4-3 and 4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-10</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-20</td>
<td>8-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References-2</td>
<td>References-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. New or changed material is indicated by a star (*). 

3. File this transmittal sheet in front of the publication.

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION:** Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

**DESTRUCTION NOTICE:** Destroy by any method that prevents disclosure of contents or reconstruction of the document.
By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

MARK A. MILLEY
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:

KATHLEEN S. MILLER
Administrative Assistant
to the Secretary of the Army
1901801

DISTRIBUTION:
Distributed in electronic media only (EMO).

PIN: 085753-001
Aeromedical Training for Flight Personnel

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 1</th>
<th>THE TRAINING PROGRAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Training Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Initial Aeromedical Training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*Aeromedical Refresher Training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Approved Physiological Training Units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mission Considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Responsibilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*Revalidation and Waiver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Training Record Documentation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 2</th>
<th>ALTITUDE PHYSIOLOGY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SECTION I – THE ATMOSPHERE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physical Characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Composition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atmospheric (Barometric) Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dalton’s Law of Partial Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physiological Zones of the Atmosphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SECTION II – CIRCULATORY SYSTEM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structure and Function of the Circulatory System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Components and Functions of Blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SECTION III – RESPIRATORY SYSTEM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Breathing and Respiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Functions of Respiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phases of External Respiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Components of the Respiratory System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SECTION IV – HYPOXIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Characteristics of Hypoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Types of Hypoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Signs, Symptoms, and Susceptibility to Hypoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stages of Hypoxic Hypoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prevention of Hypoxic Hypoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Treatment of Hypoxia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Distribution Restriction: approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.
This publication supersedes TC 3-04.93, dated 31 August 2009.
Contents

SECTION V – HYPERVENTILATION ................................................................. 2-20
Causes ............................................................................................................. 2-21
Signs and Symptoms of Hyperventilation ....................................................... 2-21
Treatment ........................................................................................................ 2-21

SECTION VI – PRESSURE-CHANGE EFFECTS ........................................... 2-22
Dysbarism ......................................................................................................... 2-22
Trapped-Gas Disorders .................................................................................... 2-22
Complications from Preexisting Physical Conditions ................................. 2-26
Evolved-Gas Disorders .................................................................................... 2-27
Prevention of Decompression Sickness ........................................................... 2-29
Delayed Onset of Decompression Sickness .................................................... 2-30

Chapter 3 STRESS AND FATIGUE IN FLYING OPERATIONS ......................... 3-1
Stress Defined .................................................................................................... 3-1
Signs and Symptoms of Stress ........................................................................ 3-1
Suicide Risk ....................................................................................................... 3-2
Identifying Stressors .......................................................................................... 3-2
Stress and Performance .................................................................................... 3-8
Stress Management .......................................................................................... 3-9
Fatigue ................................................................................................................ 3-10
Effects of Fatigue on Performance .................................................................. 3-11
Circadian Rhythms and Fatigue ....................................................................... 3-12
The Sleep Cycle .................................................................................................. 3-12
Sleep Requirements ........................................................................................... 3-13
Prevention of Fatigue ....................................................................................... 3-13
Treatment of Fatigue ......................................................................................... 3-14

Chapter 4 GRAVITATIONAL FORCES ....................................................... 4-1
Terms of Acceleration ....................................................................................... 4-1
Types of Acceleration ....................................................................................... 4-1
Gravitational Forces ......................................................................................... 4-3
Factors Affecting Accelerative Forces ............................................................. 4-4
Physiological Effects of Low-Magnitude Acceleration ................................... 4-5
Physiological Effects of +Gz Acceleration ......................................................... 4-5
Physiological Effects of -Gz Acceleration ......................................................... 4-7
Physiological Effects of ±Gx Acceleration ......................................................... 4-8
Physiological Effects of ±Gy Acceleration ......................................................... 4-8
Preventive Measures ......................................................................................... 4-9

Chapter 5 TOXIC HAZARDS IN AVIATION .................................................. 5-1
SECTION I – AVIATION TOXICOLOGY PRINCIPLES ................................ 5-1
Acute Toxicity ................................................................................................... 5-1
Chronic Toxicity ................................................................................................. 5-1
Time and Dose Relationship ............................................................................. 5-1
Physiochemical Factors ...................................................................................... 5-2
Entry Points ........................................................................................................ 5-2
Pre-existing Conditions ..................................................................................... 5-2
Individual Variability ......................................................................................... 5-2
Allowable Degree of Bodily Impairment ........................................................... 5-2
Body Detoxification ............................................................................................ 5-3
SECTION II – AIRCRAFT ATMOSPHERE CONTAMINATION ...................... 5-3
Exhaust Gas ....................................................................................................... 5-3
Carbon Monoxide .............................................................................................. 5-4
Aviation Gasoline ............................................................................................... 5-5
Tetraethyl Lead in Aviation Gasoline ................................................................. 5-6
## Contents

Jet Propulsion Fuels ................................................................. 5-6
Hydraulic Fluid ........................................................................ 5-6
Coolant Fluid ........................................................................... 5-6
Engine Lubricants .................................................................... 5-6
Solvents and Degreasers .......................................................... 5-7
Composite Materials ................................................................. 5-7
Fire Extinguishing Agents ....................................................... 5-7
Fluorocarbon Plastics and Polyurethane .................................. 5-8
Oxygen Contamination .............................................................. 5-9

### Chapter 6  EFFECTS OF TEMPERATURE EXTREMES ON THE HUMAN BODY .... 6-1

#### SECTION I – HEAT IN THE AVIATION ENVIRONMENT ..................... 6-1
- Radiant Heat ................................................................. 6-1
- Kinetic Heat ...................................................................... 6-1
- Electrical Heat Loads and Cooling Systems ......................... 6-1
- Heat Transfer ..................................................................... 6-2
- Heat Injury ........................................................................ 6-3
- Performance Impairment .................................................. 6-3
- Heat Stress Prevention ..................................................... 6-4
- In-Flight Stress Reduction ................................................ 6-4

#### SECTION II – COLD IN THE AVIATION ENVIRONMENT .................. 6-5
- Cold Injury .......................................................................... 6-5
- Cold Injury Prevention ....................................................... 6-6

### Chapter 7  NOISE AND VIBRATION IN ARMY AVIATION .................. 7-1

#### Characteristics and Effects .................................................. 7-1
- Sound and Vibrational Measurement ................................... 7-1
- Noise and Hearing Levels .................................................. 7-3
- Vibrational Effects ............................................................. 7-4
- Hearing Loss ....................................................................... 7-4
- Hearing Protection ............................................................. 7-5
- Vibration Preventive Measures ............................................ 7-7

### Chapter 8  VISION ................................................................. 8-1

#### SECTION I – ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE EYE ............. 8-1
- Visual Acuity ........................................................................ 8-2
- Retinal Photoreceptor Cells ................................................ 8-2

#### SECTION II – TYPES OF VISION ............................................. 8-4
- Photopic Vision ................................................................... 8-4
- Mesopic Vision .................................................................... 8-4
- Scotopic Vision .................................................................... 8-5

#### SECTION III – VISUAL DEFICIENCIES ..................................... 8-6
- Myopia ............................................................................... 8-7
- Night Myopia ...................................................................... 8-7
- Hyperopia ............................................................................ 8-7
- Astigmatism ........................................................................ 8-8
- Presbyopia .......................................................................... 8-8
- Retinal Rivalry ..................................................................... 8-8
- Surgical Procedures ............................................................ 8-9

#### SECTION IV – FACTORS AFFECTING OBJECT VISIBILITY ............ 8-9

#### SECTION V – NIGHT VISION .................................................. 8-10
- Dark Adaptation ................................................................... 8-10
- Protective Equipment ......................................................... 8-11
- Protective Measures .......................................................... 8-11
- Night Vision Techniques ...................................................... 8-12
### Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Visual Illusions</td>
<td>8-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meteorological Conditions and Night Vision</td>
<td>8-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION VI – SELF-IMPOSED STRESS AND VISION</strong></td>
<td>8-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs</td>
<td>8-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Exhaustion (Fatigue)</em></td>
<td>8-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td>8-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobacco</td>
<td>8-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycemia and Nutritional Deficiency</td>
<td>8-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION VII – OTHER VISION CONSIDERATIONS</strong></td>
<td>8-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve Agents and Night Vision</td>
<td>8-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight Hazards</td>
<td>8-22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 9 SPATIAL DISORIENTATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Human Vulnerability to Spatial Disorientation</td>
<td>9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Terms of Spatial Disorientation</td>
<td>9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Types of Spatial Disorientation</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orientation Maintenance</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semicircularcanals</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somatosensory System</td>
<td>9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illusions</td>
<td>9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visual Illusions</td>
<td>9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vestibular Illusions</td>
<td>9-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somatogryal Illusions</td>
<td>9-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somatogovacic Illusion</td>
<td>9-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oculoargravic Illusion</td>
<td>9-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternobaric Vertigo</td>
<td>9-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Influence of Alcohol or Drugs</td>
<td>9-18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 10 OXYGEN EQUIPMENT AND CABIN PRESSURIZATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen Systems</td>
<td>10-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Systems</td>
<td>10-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen Regulators</td>
<td>10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen Masks</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger Oxygen Mask</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen Equipment Checklist</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cabin Pressurization</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Appendix A HYPOBARIC CHAMBER AND REDUCED OXYGEN BREATHING DEVICE

| Flight Profiles                                                       | A-1   |

| *GLOSSARY                                                              | Glossary-1 |
| REFERENCES                                                            | References-1 |
| INDEX                                                                 | Index-1 |

### Figures

- Figure 2-1. Earth’s atmospheric structure ........................................ 2-1
- Figure 2-2. Standard atmospheric pressure measurements ...................... 2-4
- Figure 2-3. The circulatory system .................................................... 2-7
- Figure 2-4. Functions of blood components ......................................... 2-8
- Figure 2-5. Respiratory cycle ............................................................. 2-10
- Figure 2-6. Components of the respiratory system ............................... 2-11
- Figure 2-7. Exchange of carbon dioxide and oxygen between an alveolus and a capillary 2-12
Figure 2-8. Normoxia (normal oxygenation) .......................... 2-14
Figure 2-9. Hypoxic hypoxia ................................................. 2-14
Figure 2-10. Hypemic hypoxia ............................................... 2-15
Figure 2-11. Stagnant hypoxia ............................................... 2-15
Figure 2-12. Histotoxic hypoxia ............................................ 2-16
Figure 2-13. Physiological altitude limitations of a smoker ... 2-17
Figure 2-14. Effects of hypoxia on human physiology ......... 2-18
Figure 2-15. Boyle’s Law ...................................................... 2-22
Figure 2-16. Expanding air in the middle ear ..................... 2-24
Figure 2-17. Middle ear and eardrum pressure during descent 2-24
Figure 2-18. Sinus cavities .................................................... 2-25
Figure 2-19. Henry’s Law ..................................................... 2-27
Figure 2-20. Denitrogenation ............................................... 2-29
Figure 3-1. Sleep cycle ......................................................... 3-12
Figure 4-1. Linear acceleration ............................................ 4-2
Figure 4-2. Centripetal (radial) acceleration ....................... 4-2
Figure 4-3. Angular acceleration .......................................... 4-3
Figure 4-4. Effects of G-force on the body ......................... 4-4
Figure 4-5. Physiological effects of +Gz acceleration ........ 4-6
Figure 4-6. Effects of Gz acceleration on blood pressure ... 4-7
Figure 4-7. Physiological effects of -Gz acceleration ........ 4-8
Figure 4-8. Crash forces in Gx, Gy, and Gz axes ............... 4-10
Figure 4-9. UH-60 Black Hawk crashworthy design ......... 4-11
Figure 6-1. Wind chill chart ................................................. 6-6
Figure 7-1. HGU-56P aviator helmet ................................... 7-5
Figure 7-2. Communications earplug ................................. 7-6
Figure 7-3. Earmuffs ....................................................... 7-7
Figure 8-1. Anatomy of the human eye ............................. 8-2
Figure 8-2. Fields of view ................................................... 8-2
Figure 8-3. Day blind spot .................................................. 8-4
Figure 8-4. Photopic vision .................................................. 8-4
Figure 8-5. Mesopic vision .................................................. 8-5
Figure 8-6. Scotopic vision .................................................. 8-5
Figure 8-7. Night blind spot ............................................... 8-6
Figure 8-8. Visual blind spot ............................................. 8-6
Figure 8-9. Myopia (nearsightedness) ............................. 8-7
Figure 8-10. Hyperopia (farsightedness) ......................... 8-7
Figure 8-11. Astigmatism .................................................. 8-8
Figure 8-12. Rod and cone cell sensitivities ..................... 8-10
Figure 8-13. Off-center vision technique ......................... 8-13
Figure 8-14. Right-to-left or left-to-right scanning pattern .. 8-13
Table 2-4. Correlation of altitude and blood oxygen saturation ................................................... 2-13
Table 2-5. Possible signs and symptoms of hypoxia ................................................................. 2-16
Table 2-6. Relationship between time of useful consciousness and altitude .......................... 2-18
Table 2-7. Stages of hypoxic hypoxia ...................................................................................... 2-19
Table 2-8. Decompression sickness symptoms ........................................................................ 2-28
Table 3-1. Possible side effects of commonly used drugs ....................................................... 3-4
Table 3-1. Possible side effects of commonly used drugs cont’d ................................................ 3-5
Table 3-2. Caffeine content of common beverages, foods, and over-the-counter drugs .......... 3-5
Table 3-2. Caffeine content of common beverages, foods, and over-the-counter drugs cont’d .... 3-6
Table 5-1. Physiological responses to various carbon monoxide concentrations .................. 5-4
Table 7-1. Effects of various sound intensities ....................................................................... 7-2
Table 7-2. Resonant frequencies and the human body ......................................................... 7-2
Table 7-3. Recommended allowable noise exposure levels .................................................... 7-3
Table 7-4. Rotary- and fixed-wing aircraft noise levels ............................................................ 7-3
Table 7-5. Estimated effective exposure level by helmet and platform ..................................... 7-6
Table 7-6. Estimated effective exposure levels for the HGU-56P with earplugs ...................... 7-7
Table 8-1. Night vision reduction rates for smokers and nonsmokers ..................................... 8-21
This page intentionally left blank.
Preface

Training Circular (TC) 3-04.93 provides crewmembers with an understanding of the physiological responses that can occur in the aviation environment. It also describes the effects of the flight environment on individual mission accomplishment. In addition, this publication outlines essential aeromedical training requirements that assist commanders and flight surgeons in conducting aeromedical education for Army crewmembers. Subject areas addressed are by no means all-inclusive but are presented to assist crewmembers in increasing performance and efficiency. This publication contains guidelines for aircrew training program commanders, flight surgeons, rated crewmembers (RCMs), nonrated crewmembers (NRCMs), and nonrated noncrewmembers (NCM).

The principal audience for TC 3-04.93 is Army Aviation, primarily fixed-wing (FW) and rotary-wing (RW) crewmembers and UAS operators. It is applicable to division, corps, the Theater Aviation Command, Theater Command, Area Sustainment Command, and the Army Aviation community, including members of allied, coalition, and civil defense support of civil authorities’ forces. Implementation of this publication conforms to Army Regulation (AR) 95-1, TC 3-04.11, and appropriate aircrew training manuals.

TC 3-04.93 uses joint terms where applicable. Selected joint and Army terms and definitions appear in both the glossary and the text. Terms for which TC 3-04.93 is the proponent publication (the authority) are italicized in the text and are marked with an asterisk (*) in the glossary. Terms and definitions for which TC 3-04.93 is the proponent publication are boldfaced in the text. For other definitions shown in the text, the term is italicized and the number of the proponent publication follows the definition.

TC 3-04.93 applies to the Active Army, the Army National Guard/Army National Guard of the United States, and the United States Army Reserve unless otherwise stated.

The proponent of this publication is Headquarters, United States Army Training and Doctrine Command. Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) to Dean, School of Army Aviation Medicine (SAAM), Attention: MCCS-WAD, Fort Rucker, Alabama 36362-5377.

This publication implements portions of standardization agreement 3114 (Edition Eight).

This publication has been reviewed for operations security considerations.
This page intentionally left blank.
Introduction

In order to keep pace with the current operating environment, the development of more sophisticated aircraft, and improvements in weapons systems, Army crewmembers must be capable of operating these systems for extended periods of time, in austere environments, and under adverse conditions. The associated physiological impacts of operating under such conditions could impact aircrew performance and jeopardize mission accomplishment unless crewmembers are trained to recognize and understand these aeromedical factors.

Spatial disorientation is the physiologic factor that contributes most often to aircraft mishaps. TC 3-04.93 updates previous doctrine and utilizes lessons learned from recent military conflicts and contingency operations in order to incorporate the most relevant training methods related to spatial disorientation (SD).
This page intentionally left blank.
Chapter 1

The Training Program

This chapter outlines essential aeromedical training requirements needed for crewmembers. Aircrews must be trained and ready in peacetime to perform their missions in combat or other contingency operations. Therefore, leaders at all levels must understand, sustain, and enforce high standards of combat readiness. Tough, realistic training should be designed to challenge and develop Soldiers, leaders, and units. This chapter outlines the essential aeromedical training requirements needed for all crewmembers.

TRAINING OVERVIEW

1-1. The United States Army provides aeromedical training during initial flight training and during designated courses to all flight students at the United States Army Aviation Center of Excellence (USAACE), Fort Rucker, Alabama. In addition, unit commanders are responsible for aeromedical training at the unit level.

INITIAL AEROMEDICAL TRAINING

1-2. Initial aeromedical training is conducted for all United States Army students in the Initial Entry Rotary Wing and Initial Entry Fixed Wing Courses. Initial physiological training is performed according to the provisions of Standardization Agreement 3114 and United States Army Training and Doctrine Command programs of instruction at USAACE. Aeromedical training is conducted for aviators receiving transition or advanced training at USAACE.

1-3. Initial aeromedical training requirements are based on a crewmembers aircraft type and mission profile. Table 1-1 outlines the initial and refresher aeromedical training requirements.

Table 1-1. Initial and refresher aeromedical training requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Initial Aeromedical Training (one-time)</th>
<th>Refresher Aeromedical Training (every 5 years)</th>
<th>Continuation Aeromedical Training (annually)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FW crewmember</td>
<td>Academic training (refer to POI); Type IV profile; Rapid decompression profile</td>
<td>Refresher academic training (paragraph 1-6) ROBD</td>
<td>Annual, unit-level continuation training (see paragraph 1-11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pressurized aircraft or exceeds 10,000 feet)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotary-wing crewmember (regularly exceeds 10,000' MSL)</td>
<td>Academic training (refer to POI); Type IV profile</td>
<td>Refresher academic training (paragraph 1-6) ROBD</td>
<td>Annual unit-level continuation training (see paragraph 1-11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotary-wing crewmember (&lt;10,000' MSL)</td>
<td>Academic training (refer to POI); ROBD (rated crewmembers)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Annual unit-level continuation training (see paragraph 1-11)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 1-1. Initial and refresher aeromedical training requirements cont’d

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Initial Aeromedical Training (one-time)</th>
<th>Refresher Aeromedical Training (every 5 years)</th>
<th>Continuation Aeromedical Training (annually)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Army parachutist (MFF) on orders for MFF-coded or rigger position/ Special Operations</td>
<td>Academic training (refer to POI for course); Type V profile</td>
<td>Refresher academic training (paragraph 1-7) ROBD</td>
<td>Annual unit-level continuation training (see paragraph 1-12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS operator</td>
<td>Academic training (refer to POI for course)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Annual unit-level continuation training (see paragraph 1-12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Legend:
- FW-fixed-wing
- MFF-military free fall
- MSL-mean sea level
- POI-program of instruction
- ROBD-reduced oxygen breathing device
- UAS-unmanned aircraft system

AEROMEDICAL REFRESHER TRAINING

1-4. Army fixed-wing (FW) and rotary-wing (RW) rated/nonrated crewmembers who fly in pressurized aircraft, or in aircraft that routinely exceed 10,000 feet mean sea level (MSL), or Army military free fall (MFF)/high altitude parachutists (HAP) on order for HALO/Special Operations must complete aeromedical refresher training every 5 years. Crewmembers and MFF/HAP are required to participate in a hypobaric (low pressure/high altitude) chamber exercise or a reduced oxygen breathing device (ROBD) exercise using the appropriate profile for the aircraft and mission requirements (table 1-1 and appendix A). Crewmembers who fly in pressurized aircraft also must complete a rapid decompression during their initial low pressure exercise but are not required to complete a rapid decompression during subsequent refresher training. Training is conducted by an approved physiological training unit for crewmembers meeting these criteria.

1-5. * Crewmembers with one successful altitude chamber iteration must complete classroom training requirements but are exempt from the altitude chamber practical exercise requirements. However, these individuals will still require ROBD orientation and practical exercise. Contractors with documentation of prior Department of Defense-approved training may, upon approval from the government flight representative, request similar approvals through their unit standardization section. Contractors are still required to complete annual altitude physiology training requirements outlined in paragraph 1-12. All crewmembers who meet these requirements and provide the unit standardization section with documented proof of training may receive altitude physiology review classroom training at the unit level. See paragraph 1-24 for DA Form 759 (Individual Flight Record and Flight Certificate-Army) requirements. MFF/HAP are also required to complete aeromedical refresher training every 5 years.

1-6. * Previously, crewmembers with 240 months total operational flying duty credit (TOFDC) and four successful altitude (hypobaric) chamber exercises were exempt from the five-year recertification requirement of the altitude chamber practical exercise. This exemption has now been removed and crewmembers will participate in the ROBD exercise using the appropriate profile for the aircraft and mission requirements found in table 1-1 and appendix A. Aviation unit commanders/aviation training program (ATP) commanders from all Army components will consider previously exempted 240-month TOFDC crewmembers as “fit for flying duties” per current DD Form 2992 (Medical Recommendation for Flying or Special Operational Duty) with all appropriate signatures. Aviation unit commanders/ATP commanders from all Army components will also ensure that previously exempted 240-month TOFDC crewmembers meet the current TC 3-04.93 aeromedical refresher training requirements no later than 31 March 2019.

1-7. Refresher training consists of classroom instruction to review the essential materials presented in initial training. The minimum refresher training needed to meet the requirements of paragraph 1-3 are—

- Altitude physiology review.
- G-forces review (FW only).
The Training Program

- Altitude chamber orientation or ROBD orientation.
- Altitude chamber or ROBD practical exercise.

APPROVED PHYSIOLOGICAL TRAINING UNITS

1-8. United States Air Force or United States Navy physiological training units may be used if aviators cannot attend aeromedical training, including hypobaric (low pressure/high altitude) chamber qualification, at the School of Army Aviation Medicine (SAAM), Fort Rucker, Alabama. Initial and refresher training conducted by other services meets United States Army requirements for renewal of aeromedical training currency for a 5-year period.

UNIT TRAINING

1-9. The unit commander must develop an aeromedical training program that meets the unit’s specific needs as part of the Aircrew Training Program governed by TC 3-04.11. This training is crucial as most Army crewmembers are not required to attend the established refresher training courses described previously.

1-10. The unit’s mission and its wide range of operations are important factors for the commander to consider in developing an aeromedical training program. The program should include the various aeromedical factors that affect crewmember performance in different environments, during flight maneuvers, and while wearing protective gear. At a minimum, the unit aeromedical training program contains the continuation training described in paragraph 1-12.

1-11. Due to the medical and technical nature of the aeromedical training program, the commander must involve the unit’s supporting flight surgeons in developing the program. The flight surgeon provides input for all aspects of unit aviation plans, operations, and training. Commanders can obtain further assistance in developing a unit aeromedical training program from the Dean, SAAM, Attention: MCCS-WAD, Fort Rucker, Alabama 36362-5377 or http://www.cs.amedd.army.mil/saam.aspx.

CONTINUATION TRAINING

1-12. The requirement for continuation training applies to all Army crewmembers in operational flying positions; however, UAS operators are not required to conduct altitude physiology and spatial disorientation training. The training must be conducted once a year. The following subjects provide minimum training requirements for the unit to reach adequate safety and efficiency in the aviation environment:

- Altitude physiology (1 hour).
- Spatial disorientation (1 hour).
- Aviation protective equipment (0.5 hour).
- Stress, fatigue, and exogenous factors (1 hour).

MISSION CONSIDERATIONS

1-13. The unit commander must evaluate the unit’s missions to incorporate mission considerations into the aeromedical training program. This analysis should include—

- Combat missions.
- Installation support missions.
- Contingency missions.
- Geographic and climatic considerations.
- Programmed training activities.

1-14. The supporting flight surgeon helps identify the aeromedical factors present during various flight conditions and their effects on aircrew performance. The flight surgeon and the unit commander then develop an aeromedical training program that meets the unit’s specific needs. For example, a unit stationed in the Northwest may have a war-trace mission in Southeast Asia. The unit commander and flight surgeon evaluate the environmental concerns of that region and incorporate those factors into the aeromedical training program.
1-15. The commander must include all crewmembers in the unit aeromedical training program. Individual crewmembers are evaluated on their aeromedical knowledge during the Annual Proficiency and Readiness Test period according to the appropriate aircrew training manual (ATM).

RESPONSIBILITIES

1-16. The success of an aeromedical training program depends on the concerted efforts of key individuals within a unit.

SCHOOL OF ARMY AVIATION MEDICINE

1-17. The School of Army Aviation Medicine is responsible for planning, supervising, and conducting all formal aeromedical Army aviation training programs. SAAM also advises and assists unit commanders and flight surgeons in developing local unit aeromedical training programs.

UNIT COMMANDER

1-18. The unit commander, assisted by the flight surgeon, will develop a local unit aeromedical training program. The program should be designed to meet the unit’s mission requirements, while complying with Army requirements.

FLIGHT SURGEON

1-19. The flight surgeon provides medical support. He or she also assists the unit commander in developing, presenting, and monitoring a unit aeromedical training program. It is strongly encouraged to incorporate flight surgeons into aeromedical factors training.

REVALIDATION AND WAIVER

1-20. Crewmembers and MFF/HAP must maintain currency in aeromedical and hypobaric chamber training or must qualify and properly obtain waivers or extensions, as applicable.

REVALIDATION

1-21. * Crewmembers and MFF/HAP are required to stay current in aeromedical training and hypobaric (low pressure/high altitude) chamber training per Army Regulation (AR) 95-1 and the appropriate ATM. If a crewmember’s aeromedical training currency lapses, that individual must meet the requirements of paragraphs 1-7 or 1-12 as appropriate.

WAIVERS AND EXTENSIONS

1-22. AR 95-1 contains waiver procedures. An extension to hypobaric training may be granted prior to the expiration period on a case-by-case basis for those individuals who exceed the 5-year currency requirement. The waiver request is forwarded with the local flight surgeon’s recommendation to the commander with aircrew training program authority. The commander has approval authority for DD Form 299 to grant an extension, not to exceed 30 days. Individuals who do not have a current altitude chamber exposure or valid extension are administratively restricted from flying duties and processed according to AR 600-105 and AR 600-106.

TRAINING RECORD DOCUMENTATION

1-23. Upon completion of prescribed qualifications, a training document is provided to the trainee to be placed in the individual flight records folder and retained by the individual.
INITIAL AEROMEDICAL TRAINING

1-24. After the crewmember or MFF/HAP has completed training, the following entry is made in the REMARKS section of DA Form 759: “Individual has completed initial physiological training prescribed in TC 3-04.93, including hypobaric (low pressure/high altitude) chamber qualification with/without rapid decompression, on (date).”

CONTINUATION AEROMEDICAL TRAINING

1-25. After the crewmember or MFF/HAP has completed refresher training, the remarks section of DA Form 759 should contain the following entry: “Individual has completed one successful chamber run (date). Refresher physiological training was conducted as prescribed in TC 3-04.93, including hypobaric (low pressure/high altitude) chamber or ROBD, on (date).” The unit is responsible for verifying official documentation and requirements. Assistance is available through the Chief, Flight Physiology, SAAM.

SPECIAL TRAINING BY OTHER SERVICES

1-26. When aeromedical training is conducted by the United States Air Force or United States Navy and the required forms are not available, the forms listed below may be used to document the training qualification. Appropriate entries are made in the REMARKS section of the applicable form when the crewmember completes training. The forms other services may use are—

- Air Force Form 1274 (Physiological Training).
- Navy Medical Form 6150/2 (Special Duty Medical Abstract).
- Navy Medical Form 6410/3 ( Completion of Physiological Training).

1-27. Appropriate entries are made on Standard Form 600 (Health Record-Chronological Record of Medical Care), which is filed with DA Form 3444 (Inpatient Treatment Records and Dental Records [Orange]). This information documents any medical difficulties the individual might have encountered during altitude chamber qualification.
Humans can have significant physiologic challenges at high altitudes. To cope, humans rely on preventive measures and, in some cases, life-support equipment. Although Army aviators primarily fly RW aircraft at relatively low altitudes, aircrews may still encounter altitude-associated problems that cause hypoxia, hyperventilation, and trapped- and evolved-gas disorders. By understanding the characteristics of the atmosphere, aircrews are better prepared to manage the physiological changes that occur with increasing altitudes.

SECTION I – THE ATMOSPHERE

2-1. The Earth’s atmosphere may be described in terms of physical characteristics, structure, and composition. Most importantly to aircrew, the atmosphere may also be described in terms of the physiologic characteristics that result from changes in atmospheric pressure and oxygen (O₂) availability at varying altitudes.

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

2-2. A mixture of water and gases, Earth’s atmosphere extends upward from the surface of the Earth to approximately 1,200 miles (1,931 kilometers). Gravity holds the atmosphere in place and plays a critical role in atmospheric density. Although the atmosphere exhibits limited physical characteristics, it shields the Earth from ultraviolet radiation and other space borne hazards, is the source of the Earth’s weather, and supports life. Without its atmosphere, Earth would be as barren as the moon.

STRUCTURE

2-3. The atmosphere consists of several concentric layers, or spheres, each displaying its own unique characteristics (figure 2-1). Thermal variances within the atmosphere help define these spheres, offering aviation personnel an insight into atmospheric conditions within each area. Between each sphere is an imaginary boundary known as a pause.

Figure 2-1. Earth’s atmospheric structure
TROPOSPHERE

2-4. The troposphere extends from sea level to about 26,405 feet (8 kilometers) over the poles to nearly 52,810 feet (16 kilometers) above the equator and is the only region capable of supporting human habitation without mechanical support. It is distinguished by a relatively uniform decrease in temperature and the presence of water vapor, along with extensive weather phenomena.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Altitude (ft)</th>
<th>Pressure (in/Hg)</th>
<th>Pressure (mm/Hg)</th>
<th>Pressure (psi)</th>
<th>Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>Temperature (°F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sea level</td>
<td>29.92</td>
<td>760.0</td>
<td>14.69</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>59.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>20.58</td>
<td>522.6</td>
<td>10.11</td>
<td>-4.8</td>
<td>23.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18,000</td>
<td>14.95</td>
<td>379.4</td>
<td>7.34</td>
<td>-20.7</td>
<td>-5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>13.76</td>
<td>349.1</td>
<td>6.75</td>
<td>-24.6</td>
<td>-12.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>10.51</td>
<td>281.8</td>
<td>5.45</td>
<td>-34.5</td>
<td>-30.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>8.90</td>
<td>225.6</td>
<td>4.36</td>
<td>-44.4</td>
<td>-48.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34,000</td>
<td>7.40</td>
<td>187.4</td>
<td>3.62</td>
<td>-52.4</td>
<td>-62.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35,332</td>
<td>6.80</td>
<td>175.9</td>
<td>3.41</td>
<td>-55.0</td>
<td>-67.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>5.56</td>
<td>140.7</td>
<td>2.72</td>
<td>-55.0</td>
<td>-67.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43,000</td>
<td>4.43</td>
<td>119.0</td>
<td>2.30</td>
<td>-55.0</td>
<td>-67.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>3.44</td>
<td>87.3</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td>-55.0</td>
<td>-67.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Legend: C=Celsius, F=Fahrenheit, ft=feet, in/HG-inches of Mercury, mm/HG-millimeters of Mercury, psi-pounds per square inch

2-5. Temperature changes in the troposphere can be accurately predicted using a mean temperature lapse rate of -1.98 degrees Celsius per 1,000 feet. Temperatures continue to decrease until the rising air mass achieves an altitude where temperature is in equilibrium with the surrounding atmosphere. The standard lapse rate is an expected occurrence until the tropopause (approximately 35,000 feet). Table 2-1 illustrates the mean lapse rate and the pressure decrease associated with ascending altitude. This standard lapse rate is subject to meteorological conditions that may make predicted temperatures inaccurate.

 STRATOSPHERE

2-6. The stratosphere extends from the tropopause to about 158,430 feet (30 miles or 48 kilometers). The stratosphere is subdivided into two regions based on thermal characteristics. Although these regions differ thermally, the water-vapor content of both regions is virtually nonexistent.

2-7. The first region of the stratosphere is the isothermal layer. In this layer, temperature is constant at -55 degrees Celsius (-67 degrees Fahrenheit). Turbulence is a common occurrence in the stratosphere and can be attributed to the presence of fast-moving jet streams.

2-8. The stratosphere’s second region is the ozonosphere. It is characterized by rising temperatures. The ozonosphere serves as a double-sided barrier that absorbs harmful solar ultraviolet radiation while allowing solar heat to pass through to the Earth’s surface unaffected. In addition, the ozonosphere reflects heat from rising air masses back toward the Earth’s surface, keeping the lower regions of the atmosphere warm even at night, when there is an absence of significant solar activity.
MESOSPHERE

2-9. The mesosphere extends from the stratopause to an altitude of 264,050 feet (50 miles or 80 kilometers). Temperatures decline from a high of -3 degrees Celsius at the stratopause to nearly -113 degrees Celsius at the mesopause. Noctilucent clouds are a characteristic of this atmospheric layer. Made of water ice vapor, these cloud formations are visible only at night when illuminated by sunlight from below the horizon while the ground and lower layers of the atmosphere are in the Earth’s shadow.

THERMOSPHERE

2-10. The uppermost atmospheric region, the thermosphere extends from the mesopause to approximately 435 miles (700 kilometers) above the Earth. Thermosphere temperatures increase with altitude and are in direct relation to solar activity. Temperatures in the thermosphere range from -113 degrees Celsius at the mesopause to 2,000 degrees Celsius during periods of extreme solar activity.

2-11. The presence of ionic particles is a characteristic of the thermosphere. These particles are the result of high-speed subatomic particles and high energy photons that emanate from the sun that collide with atmospheric gas atoms. These collisions strip off some of the gases’ electrons forming ionic particles.

COMPOSITION

2-12. The Earth’s atmosphere contains many gases; however, few are essential to human survival. Those gases required for human life are nitrogen (N₂), O₂, and CO₂. Table 2-2 indicates the percentage concentrations of gases commonly found in the atmosphere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gas</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Volume (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
<td>N₂</td>
<td>78.0840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>O₂</td>
<td>20.9480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argon</td>
<td>Ar</td>
<td>0.9340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon dioxide</td>
<td>CO₂</td>
<td>0.0314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neon</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>0.0018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helium</td>
<td>He</td>
<td>0.0005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen</td>
<td>H₂</td>
<td>&lt;0.0001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NITROGEN

2-13. The Earth’s atmosphere consists mainly of N₂ (table 2-2). Although a vital ingredient in the chain of life, N₂ is not readily used by the human body. However, N₂ dissolves readily into and saturates body fluids and tissues as we breathe our N₂ rich atmosphere. Aircrews must be aware of possible evolved-gas disorders due to the decreased solubility of N₂ at higher altitudes. The negative effects of bubbles formed from this undissolved N₂ in the body is known as decompression sickness (DCS).

OXGEN

2-14. Oxygen is the second most plentiful gas in the atmosphere. Oxygen obtained during inhalation is required for metabolism (all chemical reactions that break down food and provide energy for the body’s operation) through the process of respiration to meet the human body’s energy requirements. Insufficient O₂ in the body at altitude can cause drastic physiological changes that may result in death.

CARBON DIOXIDE

2-15. Carbon dioxide is the product of cellular respiration in most life forms. Although not present in large amounts, CO₂ in the atmosphere plays a vital role in the Earth’s O₂ cycle. Through photosynthesis, plants use light and CO₂ to produce sugars and also release O₂ back into the atmosphere.
OTHER GASES

2-16. Other gases such as argon, xenon, and helium are present in trace amounts in the atmosphere. They do not play as critical a role in human physiology as N₂, O₂, and CO₂.

ATMOSPHERIC (BAROMETRIC) PRESSURE

2-17. Standard atmospheric (barometric) pressure is the force (or weight) exerted by the atmosphere at any given point. Atmospheric pressure is an observable characteristic and can be expressed by different units to include, but not limited to, pounds per square inch, millimeter of mercury (mm/Hg), inches of mercury (in/Hg), atmospheres, or in feet as indicated by an altimeter. Atmospheric pressure decreases with increasing altitude. This decrease in pressure is the cause of most physiologic problems in flight. Figure 2-2 illustrates standard atmospheric pressure measurements expressed in three different units at 59 degrees Fahrenheit (15 degrees Celsius) at sea level. It also shows the atmospheric pressure under these conditions using three different units. A column of air that extends from sea level to the edge of the atmosphere (represented by the block) weighs enough to exert 14.7 pounds per every square inch of surface area (illustration on the left). This atmospheric pressure is also capable of supporting a column of Hg liquid that is 760 millimeters or 29.92 inches high (illustrations in middle and right, respectively).

![Figure 2-2. Standard atmospheric pressure measurements](image)

DALTON’S LAW OF PARTIAL PRESSURE

2-18. A close relationship exists between the total pressure of a mix of gases (like our atmosphere) and the amount of various gases present in the atmosphere. This relationship can be explained by Dalton’s Law of Partial Pressure. Dalton’s Law states that the total pressure exerted by a mixture of gases is equal to the sum of the pressures contributed by each gas in the mixture. The individual pressures of each gas is better known as the “partial pressure” of that gas. Table 2-3 (page 2-5) represents the concept of Dalton’s Law as related to the Earth’s atmosphere. Mathematically, Dalton’s Law can be expressed as follows and states that adding the partial pressures of gases in a mixture together (in this case, the gases of the atmosphere) will give the total pressure for that gas mixture.
Dalton’s Law

\[ PT = PN_2 + PO_2 + PCO_2 + ... \text{ (at constant } V \text{ and } T) \]

- \( PT \) = total pressure of the mixture
- \( PN_2 \) = partial pressure of nitrogen
- \( PO_2 \) = partial pressure of oxygen
- \( PCO_2 \) = partial pressure of carbon dioxide
- \( PN_2 + PO_2 + PCO_2 \) = partial pressures of each individual gas
- \( V \) = volume
- \( T \) = temperature

2-19. To determine the partial pressure of gases in the atmosphere (or any gaseous mixture whose concentrations are known), the following mathematical formula can be used.

Partial Pressure of Gases in the Atmosphere

Partial Pressure of gas = Total atmospheric pressure at a given altitude x Percentage of atmospheric concentration of the individual gas

2-20. As altitude increases, the total atmospheric pressure drops, but the percentage of each type of gas does not change. So at higher altitudes, the partial pressure of each of gas in the atmosphere drops proportionately with the total pressure. Table 2-3 shows the relationship between barometric pressure and partial pressure of oxygen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Altitude (ft)</th>
<th>Atmospheric Pressure (mm/Hg)</th>
<th>% O\textsubscript{2}</th>
<th>PO\textsubscript{2} (mm/Hg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sea level</td>
<td>760</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>523</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18,000</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22,000</td>
<td>321</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>282</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35,000</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Legend:
- ft - feet
- mm/Hg - millimeters of mercury
- O\textsubscript{2} - oxygen
- PO\textsubscript{2} - partial pressure of oxygen

2-21. Any change in the partial pressure of oxygen dramatically affects respiratory function. A decrease in the partial pressure of oxygen quickly results in physiological impairment. Although this impairment might not initially be noticed at lower altitudes, the effects are cumulative and grow progressively worse as altitude increases.

2-22. A decrease in the partial pressure of N\textsubscript{2}, especially at high altitude, can lead to a decrease in the solubility of N\textsubscript{2} in the body and possibly result in DCS.

PHYSIOLOGICAL ZONES OF THE ATMOSPHERE

2-23. Humans are unable to adapt physiologically to all the conditions that occur in the different regions of the atmosphere. Humans are especially susceptible to the dramatic temperature and pressure changes that take place during ascent and sustained aerial flight. For these reasons, the atmosphere is further divided (by altitude) into three distinct physiological zones. These zones are based on pressure changes and the resultant effects on human physiology.
THE EFFICIENT ZONE (PHYSIOLOGICAL ZONE)

2-24. Extending upward from sea level to 10,000 feet, the efficient zone provides aircrews with a near-ideal physiological environment. Although barometric pressure drops from 760 millimeters of Mercury (mm/Hg) at sea level to 523mm/Hg at 10,000 feet, partial pressure of oxygen (PO2) levels within this range permit humans to operate without protective equipment. However, sustained flight in the upper portions of the efficient zone might require acclimatization. Some minor problems associated with the efficient zone are ear and sinus blockages and gas expansion in the digestive tract. Without use of supplemental O2, a decrease in night vision capabilities occurs above 4,000 feet. Solutions to problems in this zone are reducing activity and/or acclimatization to higher altitude.

THE DEFICIENT ZONE

2-25. The deficient zone ranges from 10,000 feet at its base to 50,000 feet at its highest point. Because atmospheric pressure at 10,000 feet is only 523mm/Hg, missions in the deficient zone carry a high degree of risk unless supplemental O2/cabin pressurization systems are used. As flights approach the upper limit of the deficient zone, decreasing barometric pressure (down to 87mm/Hg) increases the frequency of evolved-gas disorders. Evolved-gas disorders, such as decompression sickness, are possible in this zone. However decompression sickness is rare below 18,000 feet.

THE SPACE EQUIVALENT ZONE

2-26. Extending from 50,000 feet and continuing to the atmosphere’s outer fringes, the space equivalent zone is deadly to humans. Therefore, flight in the space equivalent zone requires an artificial atmospheric environment such as a pressurized suit or pressurized cabin. Unprotected exposure to the extremely low temperatures and pressures found at these high altitudes can quickly result in death. For example, at 63,000 feet (Armstrong’s line), the barometric pressure is only 47mm/Hg, equal to the partial pressure of water in the body at body temperature. At this pressure, water within the body rapidly changes into a gaseous vapor and boils away.

SECTION II – CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

2-27. In order to understand the impact of altitude on the human body, one must understand the basic structure and function of the circulatory system and the role of blood in the transport of O2 throughout the body.

STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

2-28. The fundamental function of the circulatory system is blood transport (figure 2-3, page 2-7). Through circulation of blood, this system meets the body’s O2, nutrition and excretion demands, body heat and electrochemical equilibrium requirements and mounts immune responses. Circulatory system components include the heart and its blood vessels (arteries, capillaries, and veins).
Figure 2-3. The circulatory system

ARTERIES

2-29. Arteries are muscular, elastic vessels that transport blood away from the ventricles (main pumps) of the heart. Arterial vessels generally carry O₂-rich blood to the capillaries for use by the tissues. Arteries can withstand relatively high pressures.

CAPILLARIES

2-30. Capillaries are the body’s smallest blood vessels and form the junction between the smallest arteries (arterioles) and the smallest veins (venules). Capillaries are actually semipermeable extensions of the inner linings of the arterioles and venules and provide body tissues with access to the bloodstream. Capillaries are found virtually everywhere in the body, providing needed gas and nutrient exchange capabilities to nearly every cell.

VEINS

2-31. Veins transport blood from the capillaries back to the atria (lesser pumps) of the heart. A low-pressure pathway, veins possess flap-like valves to ensure blood flows only in the direction of the heart. In addition, veins can constrict or dilate based on body requirements. This unique ability allows blood flow and pressure to be modified based on factors such as body heat or trauma.

COMPONENTS AND FUNCTIONS OF BLOOD

2-32. Although blood volume varies with body size, the average adult has a blood volume approaching 5 liters. Blood accounts for approximately 5 percent of total body weight and is a type of connective tissue whose cells are suspended in a liquid, intercellular material. The cellular portions of blood compose roughly 45 percent of blood volume and consist mainly of red blood cells (RBCs), white blood cells (WBCs), and blood platelets. Plasma makes up the remaining 55 percent of blood. Each component performs unique functions (figure 2-4, page 2-8).
Figure 2-4. Functions of blood components

**RED BLOOD CELLS**

2-33. Red blood cells, or erythrocytes, are produced by red bone marrow found inside the flat-shaped bones and the ends of long bones. RBCs transport most of the body’s supply of O₂ and transfer CO₂ from the tissues to the lungs. The red blood cell count is a tally of the number of RBCs per cubic millimeter of blood. The number of RBCs in circulating blood is relatively stable. However, environmental factors play a large role in determining actual red blood cell count. Smoking, an inadequate diet, and the altitude where one lives, all contribute to fluctuations in red blood count. In fact, people residing above 10,000 feet sea level could have up to 30 percent more erythrocytes than those living at sea level.

2-34. Because oxygenation of RBCs depends on the amount of O₂ in the atmosphere, aircrews could suffer from hypoxia (O₂ deficiency; see section IV) even at low altitudes. RBC structure, appearance, and production are among the factors affected when a crewmember experiences hypoxia.

2-35. Hemoglobin makes up about one-third of every RBC. Composed of several protein chains and an iron-containing compound called heme, hemoglobin carries O₂ molecules for transport to tissues by binding it to the iron of its heme component.

2-36. When the blood supply is fully saturated with O₂ (in the case of arterial blood), blood takes on a bright red color as oxyhemoglobin forms. As blood passes through the capillaries, it releases O₂ to the surrounding tissues. As a result, deoxyhemoglobin forms and gives venous blood a dark red color.

**WHITE BLOOD CELLS**

2-37. The principal role of WBCs, or leukocytes, is to fight and control various disease conditions, especially those caused by invading microorganisms. Although WBCs are typically larger than RBCs, they can squeeze between the cells of blood vessels to reach diseased tissues. WBCs also help form natural immunities against numerous disease processes.

**PLATELETS**

2-38. Although not complete cells, platelets, or thrombocytes, arise from small, fragmented portions of much larger cells produced in red bone marrow. About half the size of RBCs, platelets react to any breach in the circulatory system by initializing blood coagulation and blood vessel contraction.
PLASMA

2-39. The liquid portion of blood is a translucent, straw-colored fluid known as plasma. All cellular structures in the bloodstream are suspended in this liquid. Composed mainly of water, plasma also contains proteins and inorganic salts (electrolytes). One important function of plasma is the transport of nutrients (such as glucose) and waste products (such as CO₂).

SECTION III – RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

2-40. An understanding of the components of the respiratory system, the mechanics of breathing and the mechanisms of respiration enables crewmembers to better identify deviations from proper respiratory function during aviation operations. Such an understanding is critical to mitigating respiratory risk factors that may endanger crewmembers and mission completion.

BREATHING AND RESPIRATION

2-41. Respiration is the sum total of the physical and chemical processes in an organism by which O₂ is transported to tissues and cells, and waste products, like CO₂ and water, are given off. All living organisms exchange gases like O₂ and CO₂ with their environment. This gas exchange process can be divided into three parts: breathing, external respiration, and internal respiration.

BREATHING

2-42. Breathing is the process of taking air into the lungs and expelling it. Contraction and relaxation of the respiratory muscles, primarily the diaphragm and intercostal muscles, cause gases to move in and out of the lungs. The lungs, in turn, are the interface between the atmosphere and body where gas exchange occurs.

EXTERNAL RESPIRATION

2-43. External respiration takes place in the alveoli of the lungs. Air moves to the alveoli by the mechanical process of breathing. Once in the alveolar sacs, O₂ diffuses from incoming air into the bloodstream. At the same time, CO₂ diffuses from venous blood into the alveolar sacs for expulsion from the lungs.

INTERNAL RESPIRATION

2-44. Internal respiration includes the cells’ use of blood O₂, and the production of CO₂ as well as gas exchange between cells and the surrounding fluid medium. Internal respiration is a key component of metabolism, the physical and chemical processes that utilize, maintain and produce substances and energy in your body.

FUNCTIONS OF RESPIRATION

2-45. The act of breathing has several functions. It brings O₂ into the body, removes CO₂ from the body, and helps maintain body temperature and acid-base balance.

OXYGEN INTAKE

2-46. The primary function of respiration is the intake of O₂. Oxygen enters the body through the respiratory system and is transported within the body through the circulatory system. All body cells require O₂ to metabolize food material.

CARBON DIOXIDE REMOVAL

2-47. Carbon dioxide is one byproduct of the metabolic process. CO₂ dissolves in blood plasma and is also carried by hemoglobin. When blood is carried to the lungs, plasma and hemoglobin release the CO₂ to the lungs for expulsion (exhalation) from the body.
Note. CO₂ levels in the blood are also maintained by conversion to the compounds carbonic acid and bicarbonate that are used by the body to maintain acid-base balance (paragraph 2-49).

**BODY HEAT BALANCE**

2-48. Body temperature is usually maintained within a narrow range (97 to 100 degrees Fahrenheit). Evaporation of perspiration produces heat loss and helps maintain body heat balance. During exhalation, the release of warm, moist air also aids in this process.

**BODY CHEMICAL BALANCE**

2-49. A delicate balance exists between the amounts of O₂ and CO₂ in the body. The uptake of O₂ and CO₂ takes place through extensive chemical changes in hemoglobin and plasma. Disrupting these pathways changes the body’s chemical balance.

2-50. The main acid in the body is the hydrogen (H₂) ion that readily combines with water (H₂O) to form H₃O⁺. The potential of hydrogen (pH) level of a water based solution, like blood, is a measure of acidity as indicated by the H₃O⁺ concentration. The higher the pH level (>7.0 on the pH scale), the more basic (alkaline) and O₂ rich blood is. The lower the pH level (<7.0), the more acidic and O₂ deprived blood is. A pH level of exactly 7.0 is considered neutral because it is the accepted pH of water at 25 degrees Celsius and is essentially neither acidic nor basic. Under normal conditions, the body’s relative acidity or alkalinity (pH level) is maintained in a very narrow and slightly basic pH range (7.35 to 7.45), but can survive excursions outside this range for short periods of time.

2-51. The partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PCO₂) can be elevated in the body. For example, increased physical exertion increases CO₂ production and breath holding decreases CO₂ elimination. An excess of CO₂ can react with water to produce carbonic acid. That lowers the pH of blood to less than 7.3. Not enough CO₂, as when people breathe too quickly in hyperventilation, leads to less carbonic acid, an increase in blood pH above 7.45 and a more alkaline state. Figure 2-5 shows how the amount of CO₂ in the body affects the pH level of blood.

![Figure 2-5. Respiratory cycle](image-url)
2-52. Because the human body maintains equilibrium within narrow limits, the brain’s respiratory centers sense any shift in blood pH and PCO₂ levels. When unusual levels occur, chemical receptors trigger the respiratory process to help return PCO₂ and pH levels to normal limits. For example, blood with lower than normal pH (too acidic) will stimulate the body to breath more quickly to expel more CO₂. This in turn, lowers carbonic acid levels that helps eliminate acid and restore pH to an acceptable level (see section 2-50). Without proper pH balance, the body does not function correctly. Maintaining levels of 7.2 to 7.6 are critical for the necessary uptake of O₂ by blood and release of O₂ to tissues.

PHASES OF EXTERNAL RESPIRATION

2-53. The respiratory cycle is an involuntary process that continues unless a conscious effort is made to control it. External respiration occurs in two phases—active (inhalation) and passive (exhalation). It is important to note that the two phases can be reversed during positive pressure breathing. Figure 2-5 illustrates these phases.

ACTIVE PHASE (INHALATION)

2-54. Inhalation (the movement of air into the lungs) is the active phase of external respiration. It is caused by the expansion of the chest wall and downward motion of the diaphragm. Inhalation creates an area of low pressure due to increased volume in the lungs. Because of the greater outside pressure, air will rush into the lungs to inflate them.

PASSIVE PHASE (EXHALATION)

2-55. During exhalation (the passive phase of external respiration), the diaphragm relaxes and the chest wall contracts downward to create increased pressure in the lungs. Once the epiglottis (the lid-like flap of cartilage attached to the root of the tongue) opens, this pressure causes air to rush out, that releases CO₂ into the atmosphere.

COMPONENTS OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

2-56. The respiratory system consists of passages and organs that bring atmospheric air into the body. The components of the respiratory system, shown in figure 2-6, include the oral-nasal passage, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, bronchioles, alveolar ducts, and alveoli.

![Components of the respiratory system](image)
ORAL-NASAL PASSAGE

2-57. The oral-nasal passage includes the mouth and nasal cavity. The nasal passages are lined with a mucous membrane that contains many fine, ciliated hair cells. The membrane’s primary purpose is to filter air as it enters the nasal cavity. The hairs continually clean the membrane by sweeping filtered material to the back of the throat, where it is either swallowed or expelled through the mouth. Therefore, air that enters through the nasal cavity is better filtered than air that enters through the mouth.

PHARYNX

2-58. The pharynx is a fibromuscular, cone-shaped tube found in the back of the throat. It is connected to the nasal and oral cavities. It primarily humidifies and warms air entering the respiratory system.

TRACHEA

2-59. The trachea (windpipe) is a tube through which air moves down into the bronchi. From there, air continues to move down increasingly smaller passages, or ducts, until it reaches the small alveoli within the lung tissue.

ALVEOLI

2-60. Alveoli are the tiny air sacks in the lung where gas exchange takes place. Each minute alveolus is surrounded by a network of capillaries that carries the blood that picks up and drops off gases at the aveoli. The microscopic capillaries, each having a wall only one cell in thickness, are so narrow that RBCs move through them in single file.

2-61. Carbon dioxide and oxygen move in and out of the alveoli due to pressure differentials between gas levels in surrounding capillaries. This movement is based on the law of gaseous diffusion: gas always moves from an area of high pressure to an area of lower pressure. Figure 2-7 illustrates the exchange of CO₂ and O₂ between an alveolus and a capillary.

Figure 2-7. Exchange of carbon dioxide and oxygen between an alveolus and a capillary
2-62. When \( O_2 \) reaches the alveoli, it crosses a thin cellular barrier and moves into the capillary bed to reach the \( O_2 \)-carrying RBCs. As \( O_2 \) enters the alveoli, it has a PO\textsubscript{2} of approximately 100mm/Hg. Within blood, the PO\textsubscript{2} of venous return blood is approximately 40mm/Hg. As blood traverses the capillary networks of the alveoli, \( O_2 \) flows from the area of high pressure within the alveoli to the area of low pressure within the blood filling (saturating) the hemoglobin.

2-63. Carbon dioxide diffuses from blood to the alveoli in the same manner. The PCO\textsubscript{2} in the venous return blood of the capillaries is roughly 46mm/Hg, as compared to 40mm/Hg in the alveoli. As blood moves through the capillaries, CO\textsubscript{2} moves from the high PCO\textsubscript{2} in the capillaries to an area of lower PCO\textsubscript{2} in the alveoli. Carbon dioxide is then released during exhalation, the next passive phase of respiration.

2-64. The exchange of \( O_2 \) and CO\textsubscript{2} between tissue and capillaries occurs in the same manner as between alveoli and capillaries.

2-65. The amount of \( O_2 \) and CO\textsubscript{2} transferred across the alveolar-capillary membrane into the blood depends primarily on the difference between the alveolar pressure of oxygen in relation to the venous pressure of oxygen. This pressure differential is critical; blood \( O_2 \) saturation decreases as altitude increases, which can cause hypoxia. Table 2-4 shows the relationship between altitude and \( O_2 \) saturation.

### Table 2-4. Correlation of altitude and blood oxygen saturation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Altitude (ft)</th>
<th>Atmospheric Pressure (mm/Hg)</th>
<th>PAO\textsubscript{2} (mm/Hg)</th>
<th>PVO\textsubscript{2} (mm/Hg)</th>
<th>Pressure Differential (mm/Hg)</th>
<th>Blood Saturation (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sea level</td>
<td>760</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>523</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18,000</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22,000</td>
<td>321</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>282</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35,000</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Legend: ft-feet mm/HG-millimeters of mercury

PAO\textsubscript{2}-alveolar partial pressure of oxygen
PVO\textsubscript{2}-venous pressure of oxygen

**SECTION IV – HYPOXIA**

2-66. Hypoxia results when the body lacks \( O_2 \). An understanding of the characteristics and types of hypoxia enables crewmembers to better identify signs and symptoms of and susceptibility to hypoxia, ultimately increasing survivability.

**CHARACTERISTICS OF HYPOXIA**

2-67. Hypoxia is defined as the state of \( O_2 \) deficiency in the blood cells and tissues significant enough to cause impairment of function. It is generally associated with flights at high altitude. However, other factors such as alcohol abuse, heavy smoking, and various medications can interfere with blood’s ability to carry and absorb \( O_2 \), thereby reducing the body’s tolerance to hypoxia.

2-68. While hypoxia refers to a state of \( O_2 \) deficiency, normoxia (normal oxygenation) is when enough oxygen (red) is available to the lungs to load up the RBC in the arteries for delivery to the tissues for its use. The tissues, in turn, unload CO\textsubscript{2} (purple) into the venous blood to be returned to the lungs to be released into the atmosphere. Figure 2-8, page 2-14, depicts normoxia (normal oxygenation).
TYPES OF HYPOXIA

2-69. There are four major types of hypoxia: hypoxic, hypemic, stagnant, and histotoxic. Each type is classified according to cause.

HYPOXIC HYPOXIA

2-70. Hypoxic hypoxia occurs when there is not enough O₂ in the air or when decreasing atmospheric pressure prevents diffusion of O₂ from the lungs to the bloodstream. Aviation personnel are most likely to encounter this type of hypoxia at high altitudes due to the reduction of PO₂ in the atmosphere. Altitudes above 10,000 feet MSL place the body in the deficient physiological zone and an aviator may begin to feel the effects of hypoxic hypoxia. Figure 2-9 depicts hypoxic hypoxia, when little or no O₂ (red) is available to the lungs and the red blood cells do not deliver enough O₂ to meet the needs of the tissues.
HYPEMIC HYPOXIA

2-71. Hypemic, or anemic, hypoxia is caused by a reduction in blood’s O₂-carrying capacity. Anemia and blood loss are the most common causes of this type of hypoxia. Other possible causes include exposure to carbon monoxide, nitrites, and sulfa drugs that form compounds with and reduce the amount of hemoglobin available to combine with O₂. Figure 2-10 depicts hypemic hypoxia when carbon monoxide (grey) is inhaled, poisons the red blood cells, reduces their ability to pick up and deliver O₂.

![Figure 2-10. Hypemic hypoxia](image)

STAGNANT HYPOXIA

2-72. With stagnant hypoxia, blood’s O₂-carrying capacity is adequate but circulation is inadequate. Figure 2-11 illustrates that in stagnant hypoxia, there may be enough O₂ to breathe and blood to deliver it, but the blood vessels are compressed (for example, a pinch point caused by crossing your legs) and not enough blood can reach the tissues. Conditions such as heart failure, arterial spasm, and blood vessel occlusion predispose affected individuals to stagnant hypoxia. This type of hypoxia often occurs when a crewmember experiences extreme gravitational forces and blood flow is disrupted, causing blood to stagnate.

![Figure 2-11. Stagnant hypoxia](image)
HISTOTOXIC HYPOXIA

2-73. Histotoxic hypoxia results from an interference with the use of O₂ by body tissues. Alcohol, narcotics, or a poison such as cyanide (blue) is inhaled (or can be ingested) and is delivered to the tissues by the blood where it poisons the tissues, keeping them from using the available O₂ (figure 2-12).

Figure 2-12. Histotoxic hypoxia

SIGNS, SYMPTOMS, AND SUSCEPTIBILITY TO HYPOXIA

2-74. Hypoxia may manifest itself differently in individuals, resulting in objective signs and/or subjective symptoms. Recognition of signs, symptoms, and one’s susceptibility to hypoxia is critical to safely operating in the flight environment.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF HYPOXIA

2-75. Signs are effects on the body that can be observed by others and are therefore considered objective. However, individuals can observe or feel their own symptoms. Since symptoms can vary from person to person, they are considered subjective. Hypoxia can occur abruptly or have a slow onset. It is imperative to understand the possible signs and symptoms of hypoxia.

2-76. Aviation personnel commonly experience mild hypoxia at altitudes at or above 10,000 feet (3 kilometers). Personnel must be able to recognize possible signs and symptoms of hypoxia, as its onset is subtle and produces a false sense of wellbeing. Crewmembers engrossed in flight activities often do not readily notice such symptoms. However, most individuals experience two or three unmistakable symptoms or signs that cannot be overlooked. Table 2-5 lists possible signs and symptoms of hypoxia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms (Subjective)</th>
<th>Signs (Objective)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Increased breathing rate</td>
<td>Euphoria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apprehension</td>
<td>Belligerence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatigue</td>
<td>Blurred vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
<td>Tunnel vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dizziness</td>
<td>Numbness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot and cold flashes</td>
<td>Tingling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* = UNCONSCIOUSNESS
SUSCEPTIBILITY TO HYPOXIA

2-77. An individual’s susceptibility to hypoxia varies widely. Several factors determine individual susceptibility. These factors include—

- **Onset Time and Severity.** The onset time and severity of hypoxia varies with the amount of O₂ deficiency. The primary concern is to recognize and immediately determine the cause of hypoxia.

- **Physiologic Altitude.** An individual’s physiologic altitude, or the body’s perceived altitude, is as important as true altitude. Self-imposed stressors such as tobacco and alcohol increase physiologic altitude.
  
  ▪ **Tobacco.** The hemoglobin molecules of RBCs have a 200- to 300-times greater affinity for carbon monoxide than for O₂. Cigarette smoking significantly increases the amount of carbon monoxide bound with hemoglobin, a combination known as carboxyhemoglobin. Carbon monoxide reduces the capacity of blood to combine with O₂ and can also interfere with the blood’s ability to release what O₂ it has to the tissues. Smoking 3 cigarettes in rapid succession or 20 to 30 cigarettes within 24 hours before a flight can saturate 8 to 10 percent of blood’s hemoglobin. Physiological effects of this condition include loss of about 20 percent of a smoker’s night vision at sea level and a physiologic altitude of 5,000 feet at sea level (figure 2-13).

  ![Figure 2-13. Physiological altitude limitations of a smoker](image)

  COHB - Carboxyhemoglobin

- **Alcohol.** Alcohol creates conditions in the body for histotoxic hypoxia. For example, an individual who has consumed 1 ounce of alcohol can have a physiologic altitude of 2,000 feet sea level. Chronic, excessive alcohol use can also impair blood production.

- **Individual Factors.** Metabolic rate, diet and nutrition, and emotions greatly influence an individual’s susceptibility to hypoxia. Some areas to consider include—
  
  ▪ **Physical Activity.** When physical activity increases, the body demands a greater amount of O₂. This increased O₂ demand causes a more rapid onset of hypoxia.
  
  ▪ **Physical Fitness.** An individual who is physically conditioned normally has a higher tolerance to altitude problems than one who is not. Physical fitness raises an individual’s tolerance.
  
  ▪ **Diet and Nutrition.** Consuming some prepackaged foods, like cured meats, can increase the intake of an O₂-depleting agent similar to carbon monoxide that lowers blood’s ability to absorb and deliver O₂ and thereby decreases altitude tolerance. Many crewmembers have
noticed a positive difference in altitude tolerance when they eat a more balanced, nutritious diet.

- **Ascent Rate.** Rapid ascent rates negatively affect an individual’s susceptibility to hypoxia. Rapid ascent to high altitudes can occur before the body can accommodate to the changes and a crewmember notices serious symptoms.
- **Exposure Duration.** The effects of exposure to altitude relate directly to an individual’s length of exposure. The longer the exposure, the more detrimental the effect. However, the higher the altitude, the shorter the exposure time required before symptoms of hypoxia occur.
- **Ambient Temperature.** Extremes in temperature generally increase the body’s metabolic rate. A rise in temperature increases an individual’s O₂ requirements while decreasing the body’s tolerance to hypoxia. These conditions can cause hypoxia to develop at lower altitudes than usual.

**EFFECTS OF HYPOXIA**

2-78. The effects of hypoxia on the human physiology are complex (figure 2-14). The most important effects of hypoxia are those directly or indirectly related to the nervous system. Nerve tissue has a heavy requirement for O₂. Brain tissue is one of the first areas affected by O₂ deficiency, and a prolonged or severe lack of O₂ destroys brain cells. Hypoxia demonstrations conducted in an altitude chamber do not produce any known brain damage since the severity and duration of hypoxia are minimized.

![Figure 2-14. Effects of hypoxia on human physiology](image)

2-79. The time of useful consciousness (TUC) is the period of time between interruption of the O₂ supply and when an individual loses the ability to take corrective action. Table 2-6 shows the TUC varies with the altitude at which an individual is flying. In a pressurized aircraft that loses cabin pressurization—as in rapid decompression—an individual has 30 to 50 percent the TUC shown in table 2-6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Altitude (feet)</th>
<th>Time of useful consciousness</th>
<th>w/ Rapid Decompression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;50,000</td>
<td>9–12 seconds</td>
<td>4–6 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43,000</td>
<td>9–12 seconds</td>
<td>4–6 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35,000</td>
<td>30–60 seconds</td>
<td>15–30 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>4–6 minutes</td>
<td>2–3 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22,000</td>
<td>8–10 minutes</td>
<td>4–5 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18,000</td>
<td>20–30 minutes</td>
<td>10–15 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2-6. Relationship between time of useful consciousness and altitude
STAGES OF HYPOXIC HYPOXIA

2-80. There are four stages of hypoxic hypoxia: indifferent, compensatory, disturbance, and critical. Table 2-7 shows the variance of stages according to altitude and severity of symptoms.

Table 2-7. Stages of hypoxic hypoxia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stages</th>
<th>Altitude (thousands of feet)</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indifferent (98%–90% oxygen saturation)</td>
<td>0–10</td>
<td>Decreased night vision at 4,000’ mean sea level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compensatory (89%–80% oxygen saturation)</td>
<td>10–15</td>
<td>Drowsiness; poor judgment; impaired coordination and efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disturbance (79%–70% oxygen saturation)</td>
<td>15–20</td>
<td>Impaired flight control, handwriting, speech, vision, intellectual function, and judgment; decreased coordination, memory, and sensation to pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical (69%–60% oxygen saturation)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Circulatory and central nervous system failure; convulsions; cardiovascular collapse; death</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Self-imposed stressors may place an individual at a higher physiological altitude than his/her actual altitude

INDIFFERENCE STAGE

2-81. Mild hypoxia in the indifferent stage causes night vision to deteriorate at about 4,000 feet (1,219 meters). Crewmembers who fly above 4,000 feet at night should be aware that visual acuity decreases significantly in this stage due to dark conditions and the development of mild hypoxia. Self-imposed stressors will increase the effects of hypoxia at all altitudes.

COMPENSATORY STAGE

2-82. The circulatory system and, to a lesser degree, the respiratory system provide some defense against hypoxia at the compensatory stage. Pulse rate, systolic blood pressure, circulation rate, and cardiac output increase. Respiration increases in depth and sometimes in rate. At 10,000 feet (3,030 meters) to 15,000 feet (4,572 meters), the effects of hypoxia on the nervous system become increasingly apparent. After 10 to 15 minutes, impaired efficiency may be obvious. Crewmembers might become drowsy and make frequent errors in judgment. They might also find it difficult to perform even simple tasks requiring alertness or moderate muscular coordination. Crewmembers preoccupied with duties can easily overlook hypoxia at this stage.

DISTURBANCE STAGE

2-83. In the disturbance stage, physiological responses can no longer compensate for O₂ deficiency. Occasionally, crewmembers can become unconscious from hypoxia without undergoing the subjective symptoms described in table 2-7. Fatigue, sleepiness, dizziness, headache, breathlessness, and euphoria are the symptoms most often reported at this stage. Other symptoms include—

- **Loss of Senses.** Peripheral vision and central vision are impaired, and visual acuity is diminished. Weakness and loss of muscular coordination are experienced. The sensations of touch and pain are diminished or lost. Hearing is one of the last senses to be lost.

- **Reduced Mental Processes.** Intellectual impairment is an early sign that often prevents an individual from recognizing disabilities. Thinking is slowed, and calculations are unreliable. Short-term memory is poor, and judgment—as well as reaction time—is affected.

- **Unusual Personality Traits.** There might be a display of basic personality traits and emotions much the same as with alcoholic intoxication. Euphoria, aggressiveness, overconfidence, or depression can occur.

- **Reduced Psychomotor Functions.** Muscular coordination is decreased, and delicate or fine muscular movements might be impossible to complete. Stammering and illegible handwriting are typical of hypoxic impairment.
- **Cyanosis.** When cyanosis occurs, the skin becomes bluish in color. This effect is caused by O\textsubscript{2} molecules failing to attach to hemoglobin molecules.

**Critical Stage**

2-84. Within 3 to 5 minutes without O\textsubscript{2}, judgment and coordination usually deteriorate. Mental confusion, dizziness, incapacitation, and unconsciousness subsequently occur.

**Prevention of Hypoxic Hypoxia**

2-85. Understanding the causes and types of hypoxia assists in its prevention. Hypoxic hypoxia is the type most often encountered in aviation. Prevention methods include limiting time at altitude, using supplemental O\textsubscript{2}, and pressurizing the cabin.

**Limiting Time at Altitude**

2-86. The amount or percentage of O\textsubscript{2} required to maintain normal saturation levels varies with altitude. At sea level, a 21-percent concentration of ambient air O\textsubscript{2} is necessary to maintain the normal blood O\textsubscript{2} saturation of 96 to 98 percent. At 20,000 feet (6,096 meters), however, a 49-percent concentration of O\textsubscript{2} is required to maintain the same saturation.

2-87. The upper limit of continuous-flow O\textsubscript{2} is reached at about 34,000 feet. Above 34,000 feet, positive pressure is necessary to maintain an adequate O\textsubscript{2} saturation level. Positive pressure, however, cannot exceed 30mm/Hg because—

- Most O\textsubscript{2} masks cannot hold positive pressures of more than 25mm/Hg without leaking.
- Excess pressure might enter the middle ear through the Eustachian tubes, causing a painful condition where the eardrum bulges outward.
- Crewmembers can encounter difficulty when exhaling against the pressure, resulting in hyperventilation.

**Using Supplemental Oxygen**

2-88. During flights that exceed 10,000 feet for greater than one hour, crewmembers will use supplemental O\textsubscript{2}. Furthermore, during flights that exceed 12,000 feet for greater than 30 minutes and anytime a flight exceeds 14,000 feet, crewmembers will use supplemental O\textsubscript{2}. Supplemental O\textsubscript{2} is necessary because of the risks of mild hypoxia and loss of visual acuity. See chapter 10 for supplemental O\textsubscript{2} capabilities, and AR 95-1 for additional supplemental O\textsubscript{2} requirements.

**Pressurizing the Cabin**

2-89. Pressurization such as that found in C-12 aircraft can prevent hypoxia. Supplemental O\textsubscript{2} should be available in the aircraft in case of pressurization loss.

**Treatment of Hypoxia**

2-90. Individuals who exhibit signs and symptoms of hypoxia must be treated immediately. Treatment consists of giving the individual 100-percent O\textsubscript{2}. If O\textsubscript{2} is not available, descent to an altitude below 10,000 feet is mandatory. When hypoxia symptoms persist, the type and cause must be determined and treatment administered accordingly.

**Section V – Hyperventilation**

2-91. Hyperventilation is an excessive rate and depth of respiration that leads to an abnormal loss of CO\textsubscript{2} from blood that can lead to changes in the body’s acid base balance resulting in negative side-effects. This condition occurs more often among aviators than is generally recognized. Hyperventilation seldom incapacitates an individual completely, but it causes disturbing symptoms that can alarm an uninformed aviator. In such cases, an increased breathing rate and heightened anxiety further aggravate the problem.
CAUSES

2-92. The human body reacts automatically under conditions of stress and anxiety regardless of whether a problem is real or imaginary. A marked increase in breathing rate often occurs, which then leads to a significant decrease in the body’s CO₂ content and a change in the acid-base balance. Among the factors that can initiate this cycle are emotions, pressure breathing, and hypoxia.

EMOTIONS

2-93. An individual might attempt to consciously control breathing when fear, anxiety, or stress alters his or her normal breathing pattern. The respiration rate is then likely to increase without an elevation in CO₂ production, causing hyperventilation.

POSITIVE-PRESSURE BREATHING

2-94. Positive-pressure breathing is used to prevent hypoxia at altitude. It reverses the normal respiratory cycle of inhalation and exhalation.

Inhalation

2-95. Under positive-pressure conditions, an aviator is not actively involved in inhalation as in the normal respiratory cycle. Oxygen is not inhaled into the lungs; instead, it is forced into the lungs under positive pressure.

Exhalation

2-96. Under positive-pressure conditions, an aviator is forced to breathe out against the pressure. The force the individual must exert when exhaling results in an increased rate and depth of breathing. At this point, too much CO₂ is lost and alkalosis, or increased pH, occurs. Pauses between exhaling and inhaling can reverse this condition and maintain a near-normal level of CO₂ during pressure breathing.

HYPOXIA

2-97. With the onset of hypoxia and the resultant decreased blood O₂ saturation level, the respiratory center triggers an increase in breathing rate to gain more O₂. Although rapid breathing is beneficial for O₂ uptake, it can cause an excessive loss of CO₂ if continued too long.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF HYPERVENTILATION

2-98. The signs and symptoms of hyperventilation are caused by chemical imbalance and an excessive loss of CO₂. Signs and symptoms include—

- Dizziness.
- Muscle spasms.
- Unconsciousness.
- Visual impairment.
- Tingling sensations.
- Hot and cold sensations.

2-99. The signs and symptoms of hyperventilation and hypoxia are similar and may be hard to differentiate in flight. When in doubt, treat as if the episode is hypoxia and give supplemental O₂ (if available) or descend below 10,000 feet.

TREATMENT

2-100. The most effective treatment for hyperventilation is voluntary reduction in the affected individual’s rate of respiration. However, an extremely apprehensive person might not respond to directions to breathe more slowly.
2-101. Although it is difficult, the affected individual should try to control their respiration rate (the normal rate is 12 to 16 breaths per minute). If conscious control of respiration is not possible and symptoms continue, the individual should talk or read a checklist aloud. It is physiologically impossible to talk and hyperventilate at the same time. Talking or singing elevates the body’s CO₂ level and helps regulate breathing and pH balance within the bloodstream.

2-102. When hypoxia and hyperventilation occur concurrently, a decrease in the respiratory rate and intake of 100-percent O₂ corrects the condition. If hypoxia is severe, the affected individual must return to ground level before becoming incapacitated.

SECTION VI – PRESSURE-CHANGE EFFECTS

2-103. The human body can withstand enormous changes in barometric pressure as long as air pressure in the body cavities equals ambient air pressure. Difficulties occur when expanding gas cannot escape the body, allowing ambient and body pressures to equalize. The discussion in this section applies to non-pressurized flight and direct exposure of aircrews to potentially harmful altitudes.

DYSBARISM

2-104. Dysbarism refers to the various manifestations of gas expansion induced by decreased barometric pressure. These manifestations can be just as dangerous, if not more so, than hypoxia or hyperventilation.

2-105. The direct effects of decreased barometric pressure can be divided into two groups: trapped-gas disorders and evolved-gas disorders.

TRAPPED-GAS DISORDERS

2-106. During ascent, the free gas normally present in various body cavities expands. If escape of this expanded volume is impeded, pressure builds within the cavity and causes pain. The expansion of trapped gas accounts for abdominal pain, ear pain, sinus pain, and toothache.

BOYLE’S LAW

2-107. Trapped-gas problems are explained by the physical laws governing the behavior of gases under conditions of changing pressure. Boyle’s Law (figure 2-15) states that, at constant temperature, the volume of a gas is inversely proportional to the pressure exerted upon it. Differences in gas expansion are found under dry- and wet-gas conditions.

- **Dry-Gas Conditions.** Under dry-gas conditions, the atmosphere is not saturated with moisture. With constant temperature and increased altitude, gas volume expands as pressure decreases.
- **Wet-Gas Conditions.** Gases within the body are saturated with water vapor. Under constant temperature and at the same altitude and barometric pressure, the volume of wet gas is greater than dry gas.

![Figure 2-15. Boyle’s Law](image-url)
GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT DISORDERS

2-108. Trapped gas in the gastrointestinal tract on the ascent: With a rapid decrease in atmospheric pressure, aircrews frequently experience discomfort from gas expansion within the digestive tract. At low or intermediate altitudes, symptoms are not serious in most individuals. Above 25,000 feet (7,620 meters), however, enough distension might occur to produce severe pain.

Cause

2-109. The stomach and intestines normally contain a variable amount of gas at a pressure roughly equal to the surrounding atmospheric pressure. The stomach and large intestine contain considerably more gas than the small intestine. The primary sources of this gas are swallowed air and, to a lesser degree, gas formed by digestive processes, fermentation, bacterial decomposition, and decomposition of food undergoing digestion. The gases normally present in the gastrointestinal tract are O₂, CO₂, N₂, H₂, methane, and hydrogen sulfide. The proportions vary, but the highest percentage of the gas mixture is always N₂.

Effects

2-110. The absolute volume or location of gas can cause gastrointestinal pain at high altitude. Sensitivity or irritability of the intestine, however, is a more important cause of gastrointestinal pain. Therefore, an individual’s response to high altitude varies depending on factors such as fatigue, apprehension, emotion, and general physical condition. Gas pains of even moderate severity can produce a marked lowering of blood pressure and loss of consciousness if distension is not relieved. For this reason, any individual experiencing gas pains at altitude should be watched for pallor or other signs of fainting. If these signs are noted, an immediate descent should be made.

Prevention

2-111. Aircrews should maintain good eating habits to prevent gas pains at high altitudes. Some foods that commonly produce gas are onions, cabbages, raw apples, radishes, dried beans, cucumbers, and melons. Crewmembers who participate regularly in high-altitude flights should avoid foods that disagree with them. Chewing food well is also important. When people drink liquids or chew gum, they unavoidably swallow air. Therefore, crewmembers should avoid drinking large quantities of liquids, particularly carbonated beverages, before high-altitude missions and chewing gum during ascent. Eating irregularly, hastily, or while working makes individuals more susceptible to gas pains. Crewmembers who fly frequent, long, and difficult high-altitude missions should be given special consideration in diet and in the environment in which they eat. They should watch their diet, chew food well, and keep regular bowel habits.

Relief

2-112. If trapped-gas problems exist in the gastrointestinal tract at high altitude, belching or passing flatus ordinarily will relieve gas pains. If pain persists, descent to a lower altitude is necessary.

EAR DISORDERS

2-113. The ear is not only an organ of hearing but also one of regulating equilibrium (balance). When ascending to altitude, aircrews often experience physiological discomfort as atmospheric pressure changes. As barometric pressure decreases during ascent, expanding air in the middle ear (figure 2-16, page 2-24) is intermittently released through the Eustachian tube (a slender tube between the middle ear and pharynx) into the nasal passages. As inside pressure increases, the eardrum bulges until an excess pressure of approximately 12mm/Hg to 15mm/Hg is reached. At this time, air trapped in the middle ear is forced out into the Eustachian tube, producing a sensation of fullness in the ear and often a click or pop as the eardrum resumes its normal position.
Cause

2-114. During ascent, the decrease in ambient pressure will allow trapped gases in the middle ear to expand. This expansion can cause pressure, and if not treated, could lead to pain or possible rupture. Venting of the expanding gas may occur naturally through the Eustachian tube. If a crewmember is experiencing pressure building without natural venting, they are encouraged to yawn, swallow, or rock their jaw to help equalize the pressure.

2-115. During descent, pressure changes within the ear might not occur naturally. Equalizing pressure in the middle ear with that of outside air can be difficult. With the increase in barometric pressure during descent, the pressure of external air is higher than that in the middle ear. As a result, the eardrum is pushed inward (figure 2-17). If the pressure differential increases appreciably, it might be impossible for the Eustachian tube to open. This painful condition could cause the eardrum to rupture because the Eustachian tube cannot equalize the pressure. Marked pain will ensue if the ears cannot be cleared. When pain increases with further descent, the only option for relief is ascending to a level at which pressure can be equalized. A slow descent is then recommended.

2-116. Descending rapidly from 30,000 feet (9,144 meters) to 20,000 feet (6,096 meters) often causes no discomfort for crewmembers. A rapid descent from 15,000 feet (4,572 meters) to 5,000 feet (1,524 meters), however, causes great distress. The change in barometric pressure is much greater in the latter situation. For this reason, special care is necessary during rapid descents at low altitudes.
Prevention and Treatment

2-117. Crewmembers can equalize pressure during descent by swallowing, yawning, or tensing the throat muscles. If these methods do not work, personnel can perform the Valsalva maneuver. To do this, close the mouth, pinch the nose shut, tilt your head upwards, and blow firmly. This maneuver forces air through the previously closed Eustachian tube into the middle ear cavity and equalizes pressure. With repeated practice in rapidly clearing the ears, crewmembers can more easily tolerate increased rates of descent.

Note. To avoid over-pressurization of the middle ear, crewmembers should never attempt a Valsalva maneuver during ascent. It is possible to over-pressurize during the descent; crewmembers should only perform this maneuver as their bodies require.

2-118. If middle ear and ambient pressures do not equalize after landing and the condition persists, aviation personnel should consult a flight surgeon to evaluate barotitis media. This disorder is an acute or chronic traumatic inflammation of the middle ear caused by a difference in pressure on opposite sides of the eardrum. It is characterized by congestion, inflammation, discomfort, and pain in the middle ear and might be followed by temporarily or permanently impaired hearing (usually the former).

2-119. Crewmembers who have breathed pure O\textsubscript{2} during an entire flight sometimes develop delayed ear blocks several hours after landing, even though they adequately cleared their ears during descent. Delayed ear blocks are caused by O\textsubscript{2} saturation of the middle ear. After crewmembers return to breathing ambient air, their tissue gradually reabsorbs O\textsubscript{2} present in the middle ear. When a sufficient amount of O\textsubscript{2} is absorbed, pressure in the ear becomes less than that outside the eardrum. Ear pain might awaken crewmembers after they have gone to sleep, or they might notice it when they awake the following morning. This condition usually is mild and can be relieved by performing the Valsalva maneuver following a chamber run or a flight that required 100 percent O\textsubscript{2} to be utilized.

**SINUS DISORDERS**

2-120. Like the middle ear, sinuses can trap gas during flight. The sinuses (figure 2-18) are air-filled, relatively rigid, bony cavities lined with mucous membranes. They connect to the nose by means of one or more small openings. The two frontal sinuses are located within the bones of the forehead; the two maxillary sinuses are found within the cheekbones; the sphenoid sinuses are located within the sphenoid bone behind the eye and below the front part of the brain; and the two ethmoid sinuses are located within the bones of the nose.


Cause

2-121. If the sinus openings work properly, air passes into and out of these cavities without difficulty and pressure equalizes during ascent or descent. Swelling of the mucous membrane lining, caused by an infection or allergic condition, can obstruct the sinus openings. Viscous secretions that coat tissues also might cover the openings. These conditions can make it impossible to equalize pressure. A change in altitude produces a pressure differential between the inside and outside of the cavity, sometimes causing severe pain. Unlike the ears, ascent and descent affect the sinuses almost equally. If the frontal sinuses are involved, pain extends over the forehead and above the bridge of the nose. If the maxillary sinuses and/or ethmoid sinuses are affected, pain is felt on either side of the nose in the cheekbone regions. Maxillary sinusitis or inflammation of the sinuses and nasal passages can cause pain in the teeth of the upper jaw, which could be mistaken for toothache.

Prevention

2-122. Like middle ear problems, sinus problems during flight are usually preventable. Crewmembers should avoid flying when they have a cold or congestion. During descent, they can perform the Valsalva maneuver often. The openings to the sinus cavities are quite small as compared to the Eustachian tubes and unless pressure is equalized, extreme pain will result. If crewmembers notice sinus pain on ascent, they should avoid any further increase in altitude.

Treatment

2-123. If a crewmember experiences sinus blockage during descent, the aircrew should avoid immediate further descent. The crewmember should attempt a forceful Valsalva maneuver; if this does not clear the blockage, the aircrew should ascend to a higher altitude to ventilate the sinuses. The crewmember also can perform the normal Valsalva maneuver during a slower descent to the ground. If the aircraft is equipped with pressure-breathing equipment, the crewmember can use O₂ under positive pressure to ventilate the sinuses. The crewmember should consult the local flight surgeon if pressure does not equalize after landing.

Teeth (Barodontalgia) Disorders

2-124. Changes in barometric pressure (specifically a reduction in ambient pressure) can cause toothache, or barodontalgia. This indisposition is significant but correctable. Toothache usually results from an existing dental problem. The onset of toothache generally occurs from 5,000 feet (1,524 meters) to 15,000 feet (4,572 meters). In a given individual, the altitude at which pain occurs shows remarkable constancy. The pain might or might not become more severe as altitude increases. Descent almost invariably brings relief, and the toothache often disappears at the same altitude at which it first occurred. If a crewmember experiences pain felt in a specific tooth, he/she is urged to descend immediately and seek dental care. Failure to do so will only result in further expansion of trapped gas and could lead to damage of the tooth.

Complications from Preexisting Physical Conditions

2-125. Preexisting physical conditions, such as respiratory infections or bone and joint injuries, may complicate the manifestation of a trapped gas disorder.

Respiratory Infections

2-126. Crewmembers often complain of discomfort in the ears caused by an inability to ventilate the middle ear adequately. Such inability occurs most frequently when the Eustachian tube or its opening is swollen shut as the result of inflammation or infection coinciding with a head cold, sore throat, middle ear infection, sinusitis, or tonsillitis. In such cases, forceful opening of the tube might cause disease-carrying infection to enter the middle ear along with the air. Therefore, crewmembers who have colds and sore throats should not fly. If flight is essential, slow descents will equalize pressure more easily.
TEMPORAL BONE AND JAW PROBLEMS

2-127. Upper respiratory infections are the primary culprits in narrowing of the Eustachian tubes, but there can be other causes. Crewmembers with abnormal positioning of the temporomandibular joint (temporal bone and jaw) can experience ear pain and difficulty in both hearing and ventilating the middle ear. In these cases, jaw movement (or yawning) relaxes the surrounding soft tissues and clears the Eustachian tube opening.

EVOLVED-GAS DISORDERS

2-128. Evolved-gas disorders occur in flight when atmospheric pressure is reduced because of an increase in altitude. Gases dissolved in body fluids at sea-level pressure are released and enter the gaseous state as bubbles as ambient pressure decreases. These disorders cause various skin and muscle symptoms, which are sometimes followed by neurological symptoms. Evolved-gas disorders are also known as DCS.

HENRY’S LAW

2-129. Henry’s Law states the amount of gas dissolved in a solution is directly proportional to the pressure of the gas over the solution. Henry’s Law is similar to the example of gases being held under pressure in a soda bottle (figure 2-19). When the cap is removed, the liquid inside the bottle is subject to pressure less than that required to hold the gases in the solution; therefore, the gases escape in the form of bubbles. Nitrogen in blood is affected by pressure changes in this same manner.

2-130. Inert gases dissolved in body tissues (principally N₂) are in equilibrium with the partial pressures of the same gases in the atmosphere. When barometric pressure decreases, the partial pressures of atmospheric gases decrease proportionally. This decrease in pressure leaves the tissues temporarily supersaturated (“over filled” with gas). The body responds by attempting to establish a new equilibrium by transporting the excess gas volume in venous blood to the lungs.

CAUSE

2-131. Decompression sickness can be attributed to N₂ saturation of the body. This condition is related in turn to inefficient removal and transport of undissolved N₂ gas bubbles from the tissues to the lungs. Nitrogen diffusion to the outside atmosphere normally would take place at this point.

2-132. Body tissues and fluid contain 1 to 1.5 liters of dissolved N₂, depending on the pressure of N₂ in the surrounding air. As altitude increases, the partial pressure of atmospheric N₂ decreases, and N₂ leaves
the body to reestablish equilibrium. If change is rapid, recovery of equilibrium lags, leaving the body supersaturated. Excess N2 diffuses into the capillaries and is carried by venous blood for elimination. With rapid ascent to altitudes of 30,000 feet (9,144 meters) or above, N2 tends to form bubbles in the tissues and blood. In addition to N2, these bubbles contain small quantities of CO2, O2, and water vapor. Additionally, fat dissolves five or six times more N2 than blood. Thus, tissues having the highest fat content are more likely to form bubbles.

**INFLUENTIAL FACTORS**

2-133. Evolved-gas disorders do not affect everyone who flies. The following factors tend to increase the likelihood of evolved-gas problems.

**Rate of Ascent, Level of Altitude, and Duration of Exposure**

2-134. In general, the more rapid the ascent, the greater the chance evolved-gas disorders will occur. The body does not have time to adapt to rapid pressure changes. At altitudes below 25,000 feet (7,620 meters), symptoms are less likely to occur; above 25,000 feet, they are more likely to occur. The longer the exposure—especially above 20,000 feet (6,096 meters)—the more likely evolved-gas disorders will occur.

**Age and Body Fat**

2-135. The incidence of DCS increases with age, with a three-fold rise in incidence between the 19- to 25-year-old and 40- to 45-year-old age groups. The reason for this increase is not understood but may be a result of changes in circulation, decreased respiratory efficiency, increased fat stores, and other possible physiologic changes of aging.

**Physical Activity**

2-136. Physical exertion during flight significantly lowers the altitude at which evolved-gas disorders occur. Exercise also shortens the amount of time that normally passes before symptoms occur. However, those who exercise during O2 pre-breathing show a higher washout rate of N2 and are therefore less likely to develop DCS.

**Frequency of Exposure**

2-137. Frequency of exposure tends to increase the risk of evolved-gas disorders. The more often individuals are exposed to altitudes above 18,000 feet (5,486 meters) without pressurization, the more they are predisposed to evolved-gas disorders. There are two major types of DCS: Type I and Type II. Type I DCS is considered less serious than Type II DCS. However, it is important to remember both types are medical emergencies. Table 2-8 provides a listing of symptoms for Type I and Type II DCS.

**Table 2-8. Decompression sickness symptoms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type I DCS:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>(a) Bends.</strong> At the onset of bends, pain in the joints and related tissues might be mild but can become deep, gnawing, penetrating, and eventually intolerable. Pain tends to be progressive and becomes worse if ascent is continued. Severe pain can cause loss of muscular power in the involved extremity and, if sustained, could result in bodily collapse. Pain sensations might diffuse from the joint over the entire area of the arm or leg. In some instances, pain will arise initially in muscle or bone rather than a joint. Larger joints such as the knees and shoulders are most frequently affected. The hands, wrists, and ankles also are commonly involved. In successive exposures, pain tends to recur in the same location. It also might occur in several joints at the same time and worsen with movement and weight bearing. Coarse tremors of the fingers often are noted when bends occur in joints of the arm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(b) Skin manifestations.</strong> Tingling, itching, and cold and warm sensations known as paresthesias are believed to be caused by bubbles formed either locally or in the central nervous system, where they involve nerve tracts leading to affected areas in the skin. Cold and warm sensations of the eyes and eyelids, as well as occasional itching and gritty sensations, are sometimes noted. A mottled red rash might appear on the skin. More rarely a welt might appear and be accompanied by a burning sensation. Bubbles might develop just under the skin and cause localized swelling. In affected regions with excess fat beneath the skin, soreness and abnormal fluid accumulation might be present for 1 or 2 days.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-8. Decompression sickness symptoms cont’d

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type II DCS:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) <strong>Chokes.</strong> Symptoms occurring in the thorax probably are caused in part by innumerable small bubbles that block smaller pulmonary vessels. At first, a burning sensation is noted under the sternum. As the condition progresses, a stabbing pain is felt and inhalation becomes markedly deeper. The sensation in the chest is similar to one an individual experiences after completing a 100-yard dash. Short breaths are necessary to avoid distress. There is an almost uncontrollable desire to cough, but the cough is ineffective and nonproductive. Finally, there is a sensation of suffocation; breathing becomes shallower and the skin turns bluish. When symptoms of chokes occur, immediate descent is imperative. If allowed to progress, the condition leads to collapse and unconsciousness. Fatigue, weakness, and soreness in the chest might persist several hours after the aircraft lands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) <strong>Central nervous system disorders.</strong> In rare cases when aircrews are exposed to high altitude, symptoms might indicate the brain or spinal cord is affected by nitrogen bubble formation. The most common symptom is visual disturbance (for example, the perception lights are flashing or flickering when they are actually steady). Other symptoms include a dull to severe headache, partial paralysis, inability to hear or speak, and loss of orientation. Paresthesia or one-sided numbness and tingling also might occur. Hypoxia and hyperventilation can cause similar numbness and tingling; however, these symptoms are bilateral—they occur in arms, legs, or sides on both sides of the body. Central nervous system disorders are a medical emergency; if they occur at high altitude, immediate descent and hospitalization are required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PREVENTION OF DECOMPRESSION SICKNESS**

2-138. During high-altitude flight and hypobaric chamber operations, aircrews can be protected against DCS. Protective measures include—

- Denitrogenation (O₂ pre-breathe).
- Slow rate of ascent.
- Limit physical movement at high altitudes.
- Cabin pressurization.
- Limitation of time at high altitude.

2-139. Aircrews are required to breathe 100-percent O₂ for 30 minutes before takeoff for flights above 18,000 feet (5,486 meters) to carry out a process called “denitrogenation.” Denitrogenation rids the body of N₂ as breathing 100-percent O₂ allows no new N₂ into the body as the lung breathes out the existing supply. The amount of N₂ lost depends on the amount of prebreathe time and whether or not exercise is conducted. Within the first 30 minutes of denitrogenation (figure 2-20), the body loses about 30 percent of its N₂.

![Figure 2-20. Denitrogenation](image-url)
2-140. Aircraft cabin pressurization usually is maintained at a pressure equivalent to an altitude of 10,000 feet (3,048 meters) or below. This pressure decreases the possibility of N\textsubscript{2} bubble formation.

2-141. The longer an individual stays at high altitude, the more N\textsubscript{2} bubbles will form. Extended, unpressurized flight above 20,000 feet (6,096 meters) should be minimized.

2-142. AR 40-8 restricts crewmembers from flying for 24 hours after self-contained underwater breathing apparatus (SCUBA) diving. During SCUBA diving, an individual experiences excessive N\textsubscript{2} uptake while using compressed air. Flying at 8,000 feet (2,438 meters) within 24 hours after SCUBA diving at 30 feet (9 meters) subjects an individual to the same factors a non-diver faces when flying unpressurized at 40,000 feet (12,192 meters) and causes N\textsubscript{2} bubbles to form.

2-143. When signs or symptoms of evolved-gas disorders appear, crewmembers should take the following corrective actions:

- Descend to ground level immediately.
- Place the affected individual on 100-percent O\textsubscript{2} to eliminate any additional N\textsubscript{2} uptake and remove excess N\textsubscript{2} from the system.
- Immobilize the affected area to prevent further movement of N\textsubscript{2} bubbles in the circulatory system.
- Report to a flight surgeon or the best medical assistance available.
- Undergo compression therapy in a hyperbaric chamber if symptoms persist and when prescribed by a flight surgeon. If flying is the means of transport, altitude should remain below 1000 feet of altitude at embarkation.

DELAYED ONSET OF DECOMPRESSION SICKNESS

2-144. The onset of DCS can occur as long as 48 hours after exposure to altitudes above 18,000 feet (5,486 meters). Delayed onset can occur even if no signs or symptoms were evident during flight.
Chapter 3

Stress and Fatigue in Flying Operations

Stress and fatigue in flying operations adversely affect mission execution and aviation safety. Consequently, crewmembers must be familiar with the effects of stress and fatigue on the body and how their behavior and lifestyle might reduce or, alternatively, increase the amount of stress and fatigue they experience. This chapter reviews aviation stressors and their effects on crewmember performance, presents several strategies for coping with stress, and concludes with a discussion of fatigue and its prevention and treatment.

STRESS DEFINED

3-1. Stress can be defined as a nonspecific response of the body to any demand. It can also be thought of as the rate of wear and tear on the body. The definition is necessarily broad because the notion of stress involves a wide range of human experiences; however, it incorporates two very important basic points:

- Stress is a physiological phenomenon involving actual changes in the body’s chemistry and function.
- Stress involves some perceived or actual demand for action.

3-2. This definition includes positive stress (eustress) and negative stress (distress).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF STRESS

3-3. Stress affects individuals in a variety of ways. These effects can be physical, cognitive (mental), emotional and behavioral.

PHYSICAL SIGNS/SYMPTOMS

3-4. The immediate physical response to a stressful situation involves overall heightened arousal of the body, including increased heart rate and blood pressure, rapid breathing, muscle tension, and the release of sugars and fats into circulation to provide fuel for “fight or flight.”

3-5. Prolonged stress and its continuous effects on the body can produce longer-term physical symptoms such as muscle tension and pain, headaches, high blood pressure, gastrointestinal problems, and decreased immunity to infectious diseases.

COGNITIVE SIGNS/SYMPTOMS

3-6. Stress can significantly affect one’s thought processes. It can decrease attention and concentration, interfere with judgment and problem solving, and impair memory. The constant worry about life or occupational stressors and the desire to resolve them as quickly as possible, can lead to hasty decisions made with poor judgment. Stress can cause aviators to commit errors in thought and take mental shortcuts that could be potentially fatal.

EMOTIONAL SIGNS/SYMPTOMS

3-7. Emotional responses to stress range from increased anxiety, irritability, or hostility to depressed mood, loss of self-esteem, hopelessness, and an inability to enjoy life. Crewmembers should consult a flight surgeon if emotional responses are severe and interfere significantly with social or occupational...
functioning. Aviation personnel often are reluctant to seek help for emotional problems, but it is important to recognize stress can become overwhelming at times and present a serious threat to aviation safety.

**Behavioral Signs/Symptoms**

3-8. High stress can adversely affect one’s work performance, decrease motivation, and increase the likelihood of conflict, insubordination, and violence in the workplace. Some individuals might become socially isolated. Others might abuse drugs or alcohol as an ineffective stress-coping strategy.

**Suicide Risk**

3-9. Suicidal thoughts and intent can occur in individuals under high stress. Crewmembers should pay attention to unusual behavior. If there is concern about risk, approach the crewmember in a supportive manner, inquire about the situation and escort them to a mental health provider for evaluation. The local flight surgeon should be contacted to make an appropriate referral to a mental health provider.

**Identifying Stressors**

3-10. A stressor is any stimulus or event that requires an individual to adjust or adapt in some way—emotionally, physiologically, or behaviorally. In other words, stressors are events internal or external to an individual that have the potential to produce a stress response. Stressors can be psychosocial, environmental, physiological (self-imposed), and cognitive (mental). The first step an individual must take in devising an effective stress-management plan is identifying the significant stressors in his or her life. This section reviews stressors aviation crewmembers typically encounter.

**Psychosocial Stressors**

3-11. Psychosocial stressors are life events (things that happen externally to us that can impact us internally). These stressors can trigger adaptation or change in one’s lifestyle, career, and/or interaction with others. Some common examples of psychosocial stressors are discussed below.

**Job Stress**

3-12. Work responsibilities can be a significant source of stress for crewmembers. Regardless of job assignment, carrying out assigned duties often produces stress. Conflict in the workplace, low morale and unit cohesion, boredom, fatigue, overtasking, and poorly defined responsibilities are potential debilitating job stressors.

3-13. Crewmembers who lack confidence in their abilities or have problems communicating and cooperating with others may experience considerable stress.

3-14. Poor coworker performance also can create distress in an aviator. For example, flight crews might not trust those who service their aircraft to perform proper maintenance. As a result, crewmembers could experience anxiety during flight that adversely affects the unit’s cohesion and morale.

**Illness**

3-15. Physical disease can cause distress not only from the symptoms of the disease itself but from fear of the consequences of seeking treatment. On the other hand, when we fail to manage stress appropriately, this can lead to our bodies being more susceptible to illness and fatigue.

**Family Issues**

3-16. Although family can be a source of emotional strength for crewmembers, it can also be a source of distress. Family commitments might adversely affect performance, particularly when duty assignments separate crewmembers from their families. Concern for family might become a distraction during flight operations or increase fatigue or irritability. The potential dangers of flight operations also act as a stressor on families and could cause tension in spousal relationships.
ENVIRONMENTAL STRESSORS

3-17. Environmental stressors are those stressors that originate from one’s surroundings. Some common examples of environmental stressors encountered by aviators include, but are not limited to, the following; heat, cold, noise and vibration.

Altitude

3-18. Stress caused by altitude is most evident at altitudes below 5,000 feet (1,524 meters). This is where the greatest atmospheric changes occur and crewmembers are subject to problems resulting from trapped gas. Even a common cold can cause ear and sinus problems during descent. Because flights seldom exceed an altitude of 18,000 feet (5,486 meters), hypoxia and evolved-gas problems such as the bends are not significant sources of stress for most Army aviators. Chapter 2 covers the effects of evolved gas, trapped gas, and hypoxia in more detail.

Speed

3-19. Flight usually is associated with speeds greater than those experienced in an everyday, earthbound environment. These speeds are stressful because they require a high degree of alertness and concentration over prolonged periods. This can lead to exhaustion.

Extreme Temperatures

3-20. Extreme heat or cold may also be a source of distress in the aviation environment. Heat problems might be due to hot, tropic-like climates or direct sunlight entering through large canopies. Cold problems might be due to altitude or arctic climates. These types of conditions can be uncomfortable and distracting (for example, the bead of sweat rolling down your back is distracting and reminds you of how uncomfortable you are). To reduce temperature stress, crewmembers should gradually adapt to extremes and use proper clothing and equipment.

Aircraft Design/Characteristics

3-21. Human factors engineering items such as cockpit illumination, instrument location, accessibility of switches and controls, and seat comfort significantly affect aviator performance. Other influential human factors include visibility, noise level, vibration, and the adequacy of heating and ventilating systems. When such items are inadequate or uncomfortable, crewmembers will experience increased stress that might divert their attention from performing operational duties. Airframe handling and flight characteristics are also potential stressors. For example, FW aircraft have innate stability so that, when trimmed, they can be flown relatively well with minimal pilot attention. Rotary-wing aircraft, however, require constant pilot attention to maintain stability.

Flight Conditions

3-22. Poor weather resulting in instrument flight conditions imposes significant stress on aircrews and increases fatigue and the potential for becoming spatially disoriented. Awareness of a greater potential for physical danger and the need for increased vigilance and accuracy in reading, following, and monitoring flight instruments are very stressful. A high correlation exists between adverse weather and accident rates.

3-23. The stress of night flying (over ground or water) is similar to the stress of flying in poor weather. Aviators lose their usual visual references and must rely on flight instruments.

PHYSIOLOGICAL (SELF-IMPOSED) STRESSORS

3-24. Although crewmembers often have limited control over many aspects of aviation-related stress, they can exert significant control over self-imposed stress. Many crewmembers engage in maladaptive behaviors that are potentially debilitating and threaten aviation safety. Factors leading to self-imposed stress include drugs, exhaustion, alcohol, tobacco, and hypoglycemia/nutritional deficiency (discussed further in chapter 8).
Drugs

3-25. Crewmembers may increase their physiological stressors through self-medication and caffeine use. Both behaviors could result in symptoms that could negatively affect one’s ability to act as a crewmember.

Self Medication

3-26. Commercial advertising continually encourages the purchase of nonprescription, over-the-counter medications for a range of minor ailments. The primary purposes of such medications are to cure or control symptoms of a medical problem. According to AR 40-8, crewmembers must keep their flight surgeon informed of any significant changes in their physical health (even those that can be treated with over-the-counter medication). Furthermore, most drugs, whether prescribed or over-the-counter, have unwanted side effects (for example drowsiness) that can vary from person to person. It is of the utmost importance to follow the dosage instructions and to be familiar with the potential side effects of medication and other exogenous factors (table 3-1). In general, no crewmember taking medication is fit to fly unless cleared to do so by a flight surgeon. Notifying your flight surgeon of medications you are taking is important because the flight surgeon can educate you on significant effects to include possible allergic reactions or interactions with other medications/supplements you are taking.

Table 3-1. Possible side effects of commonly used drugs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance (Generic or Brand Name)</th>
<th>Possible Side Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Alcohol (beer, liquor, wine)     | • Impaired judgment, perception, coordination, motor control, and sensory perception  
• Reduced reaction time, intellectual functions, and tolerance to G- forces  
• Inner-ear disturbance and spatial disorientation (up to 48 hours)  
• Central nervous system depression |
| Nicotine (cigars, cigarettes, electronic cigarettes, pipe and chewing tobacco, snuff) | • Sinus and respiratory system infection and irritation  
• Impaired night vision  
• Hypertension  
• Carbon monoxide poisoning (from smoking) |
| Amphetamines (Ritalin®, Obetrol®, Eskatrol®) | • Used to treat obesity and to promote alertness  
• Prolonged wakefulness or sleep disturbance  
• Nervousness, shakiness, and rapid heart rate  
• Impaired vision  
• Suppressed appetite  
• Excessive sweating  
• Seriously impaired judgment |
| Caffeine (coffee, tea, chocolate, No-Doz®, energy drinks) | • Impaired judgment  
• Reduced reaction time  
• Sleep disturbance  
• Increased motor activity, tremors, and rapid heart rate  
• Hypertension  
• Irregular heart rate  
• Body dehydration (through increased urine output)  
• Headaches |
Table 3-1. Possible side effects of commonly used drugs cont’d

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance</th>
<th>Possible Side Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Antacid (Alka-2®, Di-Gel®, Maalox®, Tums®)</td>
<td>• Used to treat stomach acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Liberation of carbon dioxide gas in the gut that can cause acute abdominal pain at altitude and mask other medical problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihistamines (Coricidin®, Contac®, Dristan®, Dimetapp®, Chlor-Trimeton®)</td>
<td>• Used to treat allergies and cold symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Drowsiness and dizziness (sometimes recurring)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Visual disturbances (when medications also contain antispasmodic drugs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin (Bayer®, Bufferin®, Alka-Seltzer®)</td>
<td>• Used to treat headaches, fever, aches, and pains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Irregular body temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Variation in rate and depth of respiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Hypoxia and hyperventilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Aspirin can contribute to nausea, ringing in the ears, deafness, diarrhea, and hallucinations when taken in excessive dosages; corrosion of the stomach lining; gastrointestinal problems; and decreased clotting ability of blood may lead to excessive bleeding in a mishap.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Caffeine

3-27. Many people commonly ingest caffeine. However, it is a drug with potentially negative effects on flight operations if not used properly and in moderation. Many beverages and foods such as tea, chocolate, and most cola-type drinks and pre-work supplements contain caffeine. Table 3-2 shows the varying amounts of caffeine in these products.

Table 3-2. Caffeine content of common beverages, foods, and over-the-counter drugs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Caffeine Content (mg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coffee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brewed</td>
<td>8 oz</td>
<td>107.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instant</td>
<td>8 oz.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decaffeinated (brewed)</td>
<td>8 oz.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Espresso</td>
<td>1.5 oz.</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaf or bag</td>
<td>8 oz.</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snapple®, all varieties</td>
<td>16 oz.</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cola-Type and Energy Drinks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coca-Cola Classic®</td>
<td>12 oz.</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diet Coke®</td>
<td>12 oz.</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Bull®</td>
<td>8 oz.</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mountain Dew®</td>
<td>12 oz.</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr. Pepper®</td>
<td>12 oz.</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chocolate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hershey’s® Chocolate Bar</td>
<td>1 bar</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hershey’s® Special Dark</td>
<td>1 bar</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3-2. Caffeine content of common beverages, foods, and over-the-counter drugs cont’d

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Caffeine Content (mg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Over-the-Counter Drugs (CAFFEINE PILLS ARE NOT APPROVED FOR FLIGHT)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Doz®/Vivarin® (maximum strength)</td>
<td>1 tablet</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dexatrim®</td>
<td>1 tablet</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excedrin®</td>
<td>1 tablet</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midol® (maximum strength)</td>
<td>1 tablet</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anacin®</td>
<td>1 tablet</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dristan®</td>
<td>1 tablet</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3-28. Caffeine is a central nervous system stimulant that counteracts and delays drowsiness and fatigue. Although it increases alertness, the side effects of caffeine might degrade crewmember performance. Caffeine can elevate blood pressure, impair hand-eye coordination and timing, and cause nervousness or irritability. Some people can experience adverse effects when ingesting only 150 to 200 milligrams of caffeine (the equivalent of one or two cups of coffee or several cups of tea). Caffeine also is addictive, and continued use builds tolerance. Over time, people must ingest increasing amounts of caffeine to obtain the same physiological and behavioral effects.

Exhaustion

3-29. A combination of multiple factors causes exhaustion; it rarely stems from one factor alone. Contributing factors include poor diet habits and dehydration; poor sleep patterns and lack of rest; poor physical conditioning and inadequate exercise; various environmental factors; and combat stress. Common side effects of exhaustion include altered levels of concentration, awareness, and attentiveness; increased drowsiness (nodding off or falling asleep); and ineffective night-vision viewing techniques (staring rather than scanning).

3-30. Exhaustion reduces mental alertness and causes crewmembers to respond more slowly to situations that require immediate reaction. Exhausted crewmembers tend to concentrate on one aspect of a situation rather than consider the total environment.

Lack of Rest and Sleep

3-31. Crewmembers require adequate rest to ensure optimal flight performance. Sleep problems are common during deployments, when the sleep environment might be hot, cold, or noisy. Changes in time zones also can affect sleeping patterns. Crewmembers should discuss sleeping difficulties with their flight surgeon, as inadequate sleep is a potential flight-safety hazard. Changing the work routine or improving the environment can promote sleep and increase operational efficiency.

Physical Conditioning

3-32. Exercise stimulates the various body systems and has well-documented positive effects on mental health. Lack of exercise impairs circulatory efficiency, reduces endurance, and increases the likelihood of illness. General toning of the muscles, heart, and lungs is essential in preparing aircrews for field exercises and survival situations. Sports that require agility, balance, and endurance are an excellent means of keeping the body and mind in top form.

Alcohol

3-33. Ethyl alcohol acts as a depressant and adversely affects normal body functions. Even a small amount has detrimental effects on judgment, perception, reaction time, impulse control, and coordination. Alcohol reduces the ability of brain cells to use O₂. Each ounce of alcohol consumed increases physiological altitude by 2,000 feet.

3-34. The effects of alcohol on the body and brain depend on the following three factors:
Stress and Fatigue in Flying Operations

- The amount of alcohol consumed.
- The rate of absorption from the stomach and small intestine.
- The body’s rate of metabolism, which is relatively constant at about 1 ounce every 3 hours.

3-35. After drinking alcohol, an aviator should have no residual effects before beginning flying duties (such as reporting for the crew brief). This recovery time should be no less than 12 hours, but may require more time to be symptom free. Alcohol’s side effects are dangerous and may result in a decrease in G-force tolerance and vision changes. Taking cold showers, drinking coffee, or breathing 100-percent O₂ does not increase the body’s ability to detoxify the alcohol or reduce its effects. Only time dissipates alcohol’s effects.

3-36. Crewmembers should recognize alcohol as a potential safety hazard and assess their own risk for developing an alcohol-abuse problem. This assessment involves examining the frequency and amount of one’s consumption as well as the reasons for consumption. Alcohol should not be a stress-coping strategy or used to aid in sleep.

3-37. Some individuals are more prone to develop an alcohol-abuse problem. For example, people with a family history of alcoholism are at greater risk for developing an alcohol problem than those without such a history. The following four questions will help crewmembers determine if they are misusing or have misused alcohol:

- Have you ever tried to cut down on your alcohol consumption?
- Are you annoyed by comments people make about your drinking?
- Have you ever felt guilty about your drinking?
- Have you ever had a drink first thing in the morning to get you started?

3-38. Answering “yes” to two or more of these questions might indicate inappropriate alcohol use. Crewmembers should more closely examine how frequently, how much, and why they drink alcohol.

Tobacco

3-39. The detrimental effects of tobacco on the body are well known. Apart from the long-term association with lung cancer and coronary heart disease, there are other important, but less dramatic, effects. For example, chronic irritation of the lining of the nose and lungs caused by tobacco increases the likelihood of infection in those areas. This is a significant problem for aviators because it affects their ability to cope with the effects of pressure changes in the ears and sinuses. In addition, even a mildly irritating cough causes distress when O₂ equipment is used. Also, someone’s feelings of “needing” a cigarette can be distracting, and an inability to satiate this “need” may lead to an altered mood.

3-40. Although smoking has many long-term effects including emphysema and lung cancer, aviators should be just as concerned about the acute effects of carbon monoxide produced by smoking tobacco. Carbon monoxide attaches to hemoglobin molecules 200 to 300 times more readily than O₂. The net effect is a degree of hypoxia. Average cigarette smokers that add about 5,000 feet of physiological altitude compared to non-smokers. Cigarette smoking also decreases night vision. A pilot who does not smoke begins to experience decreased night vision at 4,000 to 5,000 feet because of hypoxia, but a pilot who does smoke begins flight at sea level with a physiological night-vision deficit of 5,000 feet.

Hypoglycemia

3-41. Aviation medicine experts recognize the importance of a nutritious, well-balanced diet. The body requires periodic refueling to function. Normal, regular eating habits are important, but nutrition depends largely on individual behavior. Crewmembers should consume meals at regular intervals whenever possible. Because mission requirements can disrupt regular eating habits, crewmembers often skip meals. Missing meals or substituting a quick snack and coffee for a balanced meal can induce fatigue and inefficiency.

3-42. The liver stores energy in the form of glycogen, a form of energy and potential source of glucose (blood sugar). The liver readily converts glycogen to glucose, to maintain the body’s blood-sugar level. Unless food is consumed at regular intervals, stored glycogen depletes and results in a low blood-sugar condition.
called hypoglycemia. When the blood-sugar level falls, weakness or fainting occurs and the body’s efficiency decreases.

3-43. Insulin lowers the blood-sugar level by triggering the cells of the body to absorb sugar to use for fuel. Eating a diet heavy in sugar can over stimulate insulin release prompting a rapid depletion of blood sugar (hypoglycemia or a “sugar crash”) leading to a feeling of sudden fatigue. Therefore, it is important to maintain a balanced diet that includes proteins, fats, and carbohydrates.

**COGNITIVE (MENTAL) STRESSORS**

3-44. How one perceives a given situation or problem is a potentially significant and frequently overlooked source of stress. Pessimism, obsession, failure to focus on the present, and/or low self-confidence can create a self-fulfilling prophecy that will ensure a negative outcome. Below are some typical thought problems crewmembers might encounter that can increase overall stress.

**“Musts” and “Shoulds”**

3-45. Albert Ellis, a renowned clinical psychologist, observed that stress results when individuals believe things must go their way or should conform to their own needs and desires or they cannot function. This lack of flexibility in thinking causes problems when reality does not accommodate one’s wishes. Failure to accept the possibility things might happen contrary to one’s wishes leaves one unprepared, frustrated, and dysfunctional.

**All or Nothing Thinking**

3-46. All-or-nothing thinking refers to thinking in extremes. You are either a success or a failure. Your performance was totally good or totally bad. If you are not perfect, then you are a failure. This binary way of thinking does not account for shades of gray, and can be responsible for a great deal of negative evaluations of yourself and others.

**Failure to Focus on the Here and Now**

3-47. Living in the past or future and overemphasizing what should have been or could be can increase one’s overall stress. Although there is utility in both learning from the past and planning for the future, over engaging in either of these activities can cause people to fail at tasks and miss opportunities in the present.

**STRESS AND PERFORMANCE**

3-48. The relationship between stress and performance depends on a variety of factors. The degree to which a given task or situation requires specific cognitive skills (including attention, concentration, memory, problem solving, or visual-spatial orientation) influences the extent to which stress degrades performance. The degree to which stress affects performance also depends on the environment and conditions under which a given task is performed. Also, the physical characteristics and psychological makeup of an individual can also impact how stress impacts one’s performance. The following are some areas where stress can impact performance.

**ATTENTION**

3-49. Perceptual tunneling occurs when you focus in on one thing/aspect of a situation, like the altimeter or flashing warning signal, and ignore everything else.

3-50. Cognitive tunneling, similar to perceptual tunneling, occurs when you mentally focus in on one aspect of a situation, ignoring other thoughts.

3-51. Task shedding occurs under high stress. In these situations, people will sometimes abandon entire tasks or elements of a task. For example, a crewmember may forget to complete before-landing checks prior to landing the aircraft in an attempt to avoid a rapidly approaching weather system.
MEMORY

3-52. Your brain tries to adapt to the stress by simplifying tasks. Under stress, remembering and integrating new information and making decisions becomes more challenging.

3-53. The following compensatory responses occur in stressful situations and may lead to increased error:

- **Over Simplification:** Under high-stress, people tend to oversimplify a problem and take the easy way out. This can cause them to ignore important information. For example, an aviator experiencing high stress may oversimplify the steps involved in preparing the aircraft, thinking “I just have to get in and start up” and fail to follow all the steps of a preflight inspection.
- **Speed/Accuracy Tradeoff:** When stressed, people tend to slow down some aspect of the mental processes, sometimes trading speed for accuracy or vice versa. People learning a task tend to think they need to be fast, so they trade off accuracy. Experienced people tend to want to be more accurate, so they trade off speed and slow down.
- **Stress-Related Regression:** Many people under high stress will forget newly learned information and skills, reverting to previously learned skills/habits (things that are tried and true and they have been able to do without really thinking). For example, a student learning a new aircraft (switching from flying a Chinook to a Blackhawk). In an emergency situation they may revert back to the Chinook emergency procedures.

COMMUNICATION

3-54. Some examples of ways in which stress can adversely affect one’s ability to effectively communicate are as follows:

- **Speech production:** many people do not articulate or annunciate clearly. You may also notice an increase in the pitch of their voice.
- **Comprehension:** communication can become like a bad game of telephone. When high levels of stress are introduced to the environment, the person sending the message is not clear in the content and the person receiving the message does not understand it well.

STRESS MANAGEMENT

3-55. Stress-coping mechanisms are psychological and behavioral strategies for managing the external and internal demands imposed by stressors. Coping mechanisms can be characterized according to the following categories.

AVOIDING STRESSORS

3-56. This is the most powerful coping mechanism. Crewmembers can avoid stressors with good planning, foresight, realistic training, good time management, and effective problem solving. Staying physically fit and eating right also are effective strategies for avoiding fatigue, illness, and related stressors. Good crew coordination and communication (including asking questions, using three-way confirm responses, and briefing lost communication) also help mitigate flight stress.

CHANGING THINKING

3-57. As indicated in the earlier discussion on cognitive stressors, how individuals perceive their environment and choose to think about themselves and others greatly affects their stress level and performance. Crewmembers can greatly enhance stress management and personal effectiveness by—

- Practicing positive self-talk.
- Taking responsibility for their actions.
- Recognizing the choices they make.
- Avoiding perfectionism and inflexibility in thinking.
- Focusing on the here and now rather than the past or future.
LEARNING TO RELAX

3-58. Learning and regularly practicing relaxation techniques, breathing exercises, or meditation or regularly engaging in a quiet hobby can greatly reduce stress. Although this recommendation might sound simple, few people actually practice relaxation regularly. Making time to relax during a busy schedule is perhaps the biggest obstacle to this coping strategy.

VENTILATING STRESS

3-59. This strategy involves “blowing off steam” in some manner, like talking or vigorous exercise. Talking out problems can be accomplished informally with friends or family, or professionally with a mental-health practitioner or chaplain. Exercise should be a regular part of everyone’s lifestyle; it is effective in both preventing and coping with stress. Volumes of research have documented the positive benefits of exercise for both physical and mental health.

FATIGUE

3-60. Fatigue is the state of feeling tired, weary, or sleepy that results from prolonged mental or physical work, extended periods of anxiety, exposure to harsh environments, or loss of sleep. Boring or monotonous tasks can increase fatigue.

3-61. As with many other physiological problems, crewmembers might not be aware of fatigue until they make serious errors. Sleep deprivation, disrupted diurnal (circadian) cycles, or life-event stress can produce fatigue and concurrent performance reduction. The three types of fatigue are acute, chronic, and motivational exhaustion (burnout).

ACUTE FATIGUE

3-62. Acute fatigue is associated with physical or mental activity between two regular sleep periods. Loss of coordination and lack of error awareness are the first signs of fatigue to develop. Crewmembers might experience these symptoms, for example, at night after being awake for 12 to 15 hours. With adequate rest or sleep, typically after one regular sleep period, crewmembers will overcome this fatigue. These and other mental deficits (listed below) are apparent to others before the individual notices any physical signs of fatigue. Acute fatigue is characterized by—

- Inattention.
- Distractibility.
- Errors in timing.
- Neglect of secondary tasks.
- Loss of accuracy and control.
- Lack of awareness of error accumulation.
- Irritability.

CHRONIC FATIGUE

3-63. This type of fatigue is much more serious than acute fatigue, occurs over a longer period, and is typically the result of inadequate recovery from successive periods of acute fatigue. Mental tiredness develops in addition to physical tiredness. It might take several weeks of rest to eliminate chronic fatigue. There also might be underlying social causes, such as family or financial difficulties, that must be addressed before any amount of rest will help the individual recover. The crewmember or unit commander must identify chronic fatigue early and initiate a referral to the flight surgeon for evaluation and treatment. Chronic fatigue is characterized by some or all of the following characteristics:

- Insomnia.
- Depressed mood.
- Irritability.
- Weight loss.
Stress and Fatigue in Flying Operations

- Poor judgment.
- Loss of appetite.
- Slowed reaction time.
- Poor motivation and performance on the job.

**Motivational Exhaustion (Burnout)**

3-64. If chronic fatigue remains untreated for too long, the individual will eventually “shut down” and cease functioning occupationally and socially. Motivational exhaustion is also known as burnout.

**Effects of Fatigue on Performance**

3-65. Fatigue can negatively impact performance in many ways. Examples of such impacts are reaction-time changes, reduced attention, diminished memory, changes in mood and social interaction, and impaired communication. Though some of these impacts may seem minor, they could ultimately contribute to an aircraft accident and, therefore, must not be ignored.

**Reaction-Time Changes**

3-66. Fatigue can result in increases in reaction time (taking longer to perform tasks). Increases in reaction times occur because of sluggishness and the general decrease in motivation that often accompany fatigue.

**Reduced Attention**

3-67. Crewmembers might exhibit the following signs and symptoms of reduced attention:
- Tendency to overlook or misplace sequential task elements (for example, forgetting items on preflight checklists).
- Preoccupation with single tasks or elements (for example, paying too much attention to a bird and forgetting to fly the aircraft, the cause of many accidents).
- Reduction of audiovisual scan both inside and outside the cockpit.
- Lack of awareness of poor performance.

**Diminished Memory**

3-68. Crewmembers might be experiencing diminished memory when they display the following characteristics:
- Short-term memory and processing capacity decrease, although long-term memory tends to be well preserved despite fatigue.
- Integrating new information and making decisions becomes more challenging, as does adaptability to change in general.
- Inaccurate recall of operational events (for example, forgetting the objective rally point location).
- Neglect of peripheral tasks (for example, forgetting to check if the landing gear is down).
- Tendency to revert to bad habits.
- Decreased ability to integrate new information and analyze and solve problems.

**Changes in Mood and Social Interaction**

3-69. Fatigued individuals can become irritable and combative. They may also experience mild depression and withdraw socially.

**Impaired Communication**

3-70. Fatigue impairs a person’s abilities to communicate and receive information. Crewmembers might leave out important details in the messages they send to others. They might neglect or misinterpret
information they receive. Fatigue also can affect a crewmember’s pronunciation, rate of speech, tone, or volume.

CIRCADIAN RHYTHMS AND FATIGUE

3-71. Humans have an intrinsic biological clock with a cycle of roughly 24 to 25 hours. Many important body functions such as core body temperature, alertness, heart rate, and sleep cycle occur along these diurnal rhythms. In the typical circadian cycle, performance, alertness, and body temperature—

- Peak between 0800 and 1200.
- Drop off slightly between 1300 and 1500.
- Begin to increase again from 1500 to 2100.
- Drop off again and fall to a minimum circadian trough between 0300 and 0600.

3-72. While the body clock can monitor the passage of time, it differs from most clocks in that it is flexible and must be set, or synchronized, before it can accurately predict the timing of events. External synchronizers or “zeitgebers” (a German word that means “time givers”) are—

- Sunrise and sunset.
- Ambient temperature.
- Meals and other social cues.

3-73. Rapid travel between time zones causes the body to resynchronize daytime rhythms with local time cues. Until these rhythms are reset, sleep disorders and fatigue will persist. Traveling eastward shortens the day; westward travel lengthens the day. Consequently, resynchronization occurs much more rapidly when traveling west. Shift work can have effects similar to crossing time zones because of the changes in light exposure and activity times.

THE SLEEP CYCLE

3-74. Sleep is not simply being unconscious—it is an active process essential to life. The sleeping brain cycles between rapid eye movement (REM) and non-REM sleep through four stages. This cycling occurs every 90 minutes. In 8 hours of sleep, an individual normally attains five to six REM stages (figure 3-1, page 3-13).

3-75. Non-REM stage 1 sleep (drowsiness) is the transition between awake and asleep. It lasts for 5-10 minutes. Non-REM stage 2 sleep is also called light sleep. During this stage your eye movement stops, heart rate slows and your body temperature decreases. Non-REM stage 3 is most important for recovering from fatigue (physical repair). Initially this is the longest phase of sleep (thought to be most important for survival). After Non-REM stage 3 is REM sleep. Early in the sleep cycle REM is the shortest. However, at the end of your sleep cycle it is the longest and provides mental recovery.

![Figure 3-1. Sleep cycle](image)
3-76. Sleep efficiency deteriorates with age. Older individuals spend less time in deep non-REM sleep. Nighttime awakenings and daytime sleepiness result.

**SLEEP REQUIREMENTS**

3-77. Individuals cannot accurately determine their own impairment from sleep loss. During operations in which sleep loss is expected, crewmembers should closely monitor each other’s behavior for indicators of fatigue such as those identified in paragraphs 3-62 through 3-70.

3-78. The average person sleeps 7 to 9 hours per day. Sleep length can be reduced 1 to 2 hours without performance reduction over an extended period. Once the period ends, however, the individual must return to his or her normal sleep length.

3-79. As a rule, 5 hours of sleep per night is the minimum for continuous operations. However, some individuals can tolerate as little as 4 hours of sleep per night for short periods.

3-80. AR 385-10 provides guidance on crew endurance planning. The following factors regarding fatigue and sleep restriction decisions should be considered during crew endurance planning:

- Complexity of the job tasks to be performed under conditions of fatigue.
- Potential for loss from errors committed because of fatigue.
- The individual’s tolerance for sleep loss.

**PREVENTION OF FATIGUE**

3-81. Total prevention of fatigue is impossible, but its effects can be moderated significantly. The following recommendations should be considered in any individual or crew endurance plan.

**CONTROL THE SLEEP ENVIRONMENT**

3-82. The sleep environment should be cool, dark, and quiet. It is best to avoid working or reading in bed, which could contribute to problems with falling asleep. The bed should be associated only with sleeping and sexual activity. If an individual wants to read before going to bed, they should do so in a chair, preferably in a room other than the bedroom, and then go to bed.

**ADJUST TO SHIFT WORK**

3-83. Crewmembers should adhere to the following measures to better adjust to shift work and prevent circadian desynchronization:

- Maintain a consistent sleep-wake schedule, even on days off.
- When on the night shift, avoid exposure to daylight from dawn to 1000. Wear sunglasses if necessary before the sun rises (as long as doing so does not pose a safety hazard). Consider wearing a sleep mask to avoid exposure to light.
- Do not go to sleep too full or too hungry, although a light snack may be eaten before bedtime.
- Avoid caffeine consumption for 6 hours before going to sleep.

**MAINTAIN GOOD HEALTH AND PHYSICAL FITNESS**

3-84. Crewmembers can maintain good physical fitness with regular vigorous exercise, which also promotes healthy sleep. Vigorous exercise should be avoided within a few hours of bedtime because it can increase core body temperature and delay sleep. Elimination of tobacco use also promotes good health and sleep.

**PRACTICE GOOD EATING HABITS**

3-85. It is important to maintain a balanced diet that includes proper amounts of nutrients such as vitamins, minerals, proteins, fats, and carbohydrates. Failing to give the body the quality fuel it needs contributes to crewmember fatigue and poor work performance.
PRACTICE MODERATE, CONTROLLED USE OF ALCOHOL AND CAFFEINE

3-86. Use of alcohol as a sleep aid can interfere with REM sleep and disrupt sleep patterns. Frequent use of caffeine often contributes to insomnia.

PLAN AND PRACTICE GOOD TIME MANAGEMENT

3-87. Planning and practicing good time management help avoid last-minute crises. A reasonable, realistic work schedule also assists greatly in preventing fatigue.

PRACTICE REALISTIC PLANNING

3-88. Practice realistic planning for total duty and flying hours as outlined in AR 95-1. Studies have shown the relative fatigue factor of a flight hour varies with the flight environment. For example, chemical mission-oriented protective posture flight is more fatiguing than day nap-of-the-earth flight.

MAINTAIN OPTIMAL WORKING CONDITIONS

3-89. Particular attention should be devoted to addressing problems associated with the following factors:
- Glare.
- Vibration.
- Noise levels.
- Poor ventilation.
- Temperature extremes.
- Uncomfortable seating.
- Inadequate O₂ supply.
- Instrument and control location.
- Anthropometry (body measurements).

TAKE NAPS

3-90. Naps are a viable alternative when sleep is not possible or is shortened by operational concerns. In general, longer naps (greater than 1 hour) are more beneficial than shorter naps, but even naps as short as 10 minutes can increase one’s energy level. Longer naps can result in sluggishness (sleep inertia) for 5 to 20 minutes after awakening. Therefore, when deciding how long to nap, the crewmember should consider what work requirements will be following the nap. The best time to nap is when body temperature is low (around 0300 and 1300).

Note. Anyone having problems sleeping during their normal sleep period should not take naps during the rest of the day. Napping can delay sleep onset during the regular sleep period.

TREATMENT OF FATIGUE

3-91. The most important actions for treating fatigue are resting and getting natural (not drug-induced) sleep. Alcohol is the number-one sleep aid in the United States, but it suppresses REM sleep. Correcting bad sleep habits is one treatment for fatigue.

3-92. After lying awake in bed for more than 30 minutes, the individual should get up and read a boring book or listen to relaxing music until he or she is ready to fall asleep. Note that screen time with a cell phone, computer or television may not promote sleep as the light and mental engagement may be more stimulating than restful. Lying awake in bed could produce a mental association between being in bed and anxiety and wakefulness that might promote insomnia. If the individual returns to bed and remains awake for more than 30 minutes, he or she should get up again and continue to do so as often as needed. Fatigue eventually will take over and the individual will fall asleep.
3-93. When attempting to recover from 24 to 48 hours of sleep deprivation, the individual should not sleep longer than 10 hours. Sleeping too long could further disrupt the sleep-wake schedule and cause sluggishness during the day.

3-94. Other measures that can be taken to prevent or treat fatigue are—

- Modifying the workplace to promote rest and prevent further fatigue.
- Rotating or changing duties to avoid boredom.
- Pacing and avoiding heavily task-loaded activities, those requiring short-term memory, or those demanding prolonged or intense mental activity.
- Limiting work periods and delegating responsibility.
- If possible, suspending activity during periods when fatigue is higher and efficiency is lower (for example, between 1300 and 1500 hours).
- Using brief periods of physical exercise immediately before task performance, particularly administrative work. However, individuals should not exercise within 1 hour before bedtime, as exercising might delay sleep onset.
- Removing a crewmember from flying duties when fatigue affects flight safety.
This page intentionally left blank.
Chapter 4
Gravitational Forces

Army Aviation crewmembers must understand gravitational forces and the body’s physiological responses to them in the aviation environment. This chapter discusses the physics of motion and acceleration and covers the types and directions of accelerative forces and their influences and effects. It also discusses deceleration and, more importantly, crash sequence and how aircraft design offers protection from crash forces. Crewmembers must have a fundamental but thorough understanding of the accelerative forces encountered during flight and their relationship to the human body.

TERMS OF ACCELERATION

4-1. Several terms are used in discussing motion; these include speed, velocity, acceleration, inertial force, centrifugal force, and centripetal force. Speed is how fast an object is moving and describes the change in distance over a period of time without any description of which direction the object is moving. It is often expressed in units such as miles per hour or meters per second.

4-2. Velocity is an object’s speed in a given direction. It is measured in distance per unit of time such as feet per second with an associated direction such as “east” or “in the +y direction.” Acceleration is the rate of change in velocity in a given period of time. The magnitude of acceleration can be expressed by the “G.” A G is convenient unit equal to the acceleration of the Earth’s gravity (32 feet per second per second [32 ft/s²] or 9.8 meters per second per second [9.8 m/s²]).

4-3. Inertial force is an object’s resistance to change in a state of rest or motion. A body at rest tends to remain at rest, while a body in motion tends to remain in motion (until some force causes that motion to change). Inertial force is often confused with centrifugal force. Centrifugal force is technically not an actual force, but a perceived outward motion in a rotating system.

4-4. Centripetal (radial) force is the force acting on an object moving in a circular pattern that holds the object on its circular path. For example, a rock on a string being swung in a circle by a person’s arm motion is kept moving in that circular pattern by the constant inward tugging (centripetal force) on the string. If the person lets go of the string (no centripetal force being applied) the rock would fly off in a straight line.

TYPES OF ACCELERATION

4-5. Flight imposes its greatest effects on the body through the accelerative forces applied during aerial maneuvering. In constant speed and straight-and-level flight, crewmembers encounter no human limitations. With changes in velocity, however, they can experience severe physiological effects. Crewmembers must understand where and how accelerative forces—linear, centripetal (radial), and angular—develop in flight.

LINEAR ACCELERATION

4-6. Linear acceleration occurs when there is a change in an object’s speed without a change in direction. It occurs during takeoffs and changes in forward airspeed. Linear acceleration also is encountered when speed is decreased. Figure 4-1, page 4-2, illustrates the concept of linear acceleration.
Figure 4-1. Linear acceleration

**CENTRIPETAL (RADIAL) ACCELERATION**

4-7. Centripetal (radial) acceleration can occur during any change of direction that does not have a change in speed. Crewmembers encounter this type of acceleration during banks, turns, loops, or rolls (figure 4-2). If an aircraft performs a turn at a constant rate of speed, the aircraft starts traveling in a new direction and away from the old. If you were checking the velocity along the old direction, it would go to zero as you are no longer traveling along that path. The new direction would be gaining that velocity and, therefore, this would be an acceleration along the new path.

Figure 4-2. Centripetal (radial) acceleration
ANGULAR ACCELERATION

4-8. Angular acceleration is complex and involves a simultaneous change in both speed and direction. That is, if your rate of turn is changing, angular acceleration is at play. A good example of this is an aircraft put into a tight spin. For practical purposes, angular acceleration does not pose a problem in understanding the physiological effects of accelerative forces. Its principal effects are important, however, because they produce many of the disorientation problems encountered in flight (figure 4-3).

GRAVITATIONAL FORCES

4-9. Newton’s three laws of motion describe the forces of acceleration. The first law describes the concept of inertia—a body remains at rest or in motion unless acted upon by a force. Newton’s second law states that to overcome inertia, a force (F) is required, the result of which is proportionate to the acceleration (a) applied and its mass (m), so $F=ma$. Newton’s third law states that for every action, there is an equal and opposite reaction. For example, a jet engine produces hot exhaust gases that flow out the back of the engine while the thrust is produced in the opposite direction.

4-10. Gravitational (G) force and the direction in which the body receives that force are important physiological factors that affect the body during acceleration. G-force can affect the body in three axes: Gx, Gy, and Gz. Gx pushes the body forward or backward. Gy pushes the body left or right. Gz pushes the body up or down.

4-11. * The physiological effects of prolonged acceleration depend on the direction of accelerative (centripetal) force and, consequently, how inertial force acts upon the body. Inertial force is always equal to but opposite of the accelerative force; however, in terms of the physiological effects of sustained acceleration, inertial force is of greater significance. The various G-forces are explained below and illustrated in figure 4-4 (page 4-4):

- Positive G, or $+G_z$, acceleration occurs when the body is accelerated headward. Inertial force acts in the opposite direction toward the feet, and the body is forced down into the cockpit seat.
- Negative G, or $-G_z$, acceleration occurs when the body is accelerated footward. Inertial force is directed toward the head, and the body is lifted out of the cockpit seat.
- Forward transverse G, or $+G_x$, acceleration occurs when accelerative force acts on the body in a back-to-chest direction. This is experienced during acceleration. Inertial force acts in the opposite direction and the body is forced back into the seat.

Figure 4-3. Angular acceleration
• Backward transverse G, or \(-G_x\), acceleration occurs when accelerative force acts on the body in a chest-to-back direction. This is experienced during deceleration. Inertial force acts in opposite direction and the body is forced forward in the seat.

• Right- or left-lateral G, or \(\pm G_y\), acceleration occurs when accelerative force acts across the body in a shoulder-to-shoulder direction. This acceleration is experienced primarily during sideward flight in RW aircraft.

**Figure 4-4. Effects of G-force on the body**

**FACTORS AFFECTING ACCELERATIVE FORCES**

4-12. Crewmembers must consider several factors to determine the effects of accelerative forces on the human body. These factors include intensity, duration, rate of onset, body area and site, and impact direction.

**INTENSITY**

4-13. In general, the greater the intensity, the more severe the effects of accelerative force. Intensity, however, is not the only factor that determines magnitude of the effects.
**Duration**

4-14. The longer force is applied, the more severe the effects. The body can absorb high G-forces applied for extremely short durations without harm, while low G-forces can be tolerated for longer periods. A force of 5 Gs applied for 2 to 3 seconds is usually harmless, but the same force applied for 5 to 6 seconds can cause blackout or unconsciousness. In ejection seats, pilots can tolerate a headward acceleration of 15 Gs for approximately 0.2 second without harm but will become unconscious when the same force is applied for 2 seconds. A force of 40 Gs received intermittently for fractions of a second during a crash landing is tolerable, but the same force is fatal if applied steadily for 2 to 3 seconds.

**Rate of Onset**

4-15. The rate of onset of accelerative or decelerative forces is another factor that determines effects. When an aircraft decelerates gradually, such as in a wheels-up landing, decelerative forces are exerted at a rather slow rate. Generally, when the rate of application is higher, such as when an aircraft decelerates suddenly during an accident, the effects are more severe. When an aircraft impacts vertically, the stopping distance is considerably shorter, and the rate of accelerative force application is many times greater. The application rate is often decreased in helicopter crashes by spreading of the skids and crumpling of the fuselage, giving the body 3 or 4 extra feet to slow to a stop. Therefore, both distance and time are important factors in acceleration or deceleration. The shorter the stopping distance, the greater the G-force.

**Body Area and Site**

4-16. The size of the body area over which a given force is applied is important; the greater the body area, the less harmful the effects. The body site to which a force is applied is also important. The accelerative effect of a given force, such as a blow to the head, is much more serious than the same force applied to another body part such as the leg.

**Impact Direction**

4-17. The direction from which a prolonged accelerative force acts on the body also determines the physiological effects that occur. The body tolerates a force applied to the Gx axis better than to the Gz, or long, axis.

**Physiological Effects of Low-Magnitude Acceleration**

4-18. The physiological effects of low-magnitude acceleration are due largely to the resulting inertial forces on the body and its components. Low-magnitude acceleration is described as Gs in the range of 1 to 10 with prolonged time of application lasting for at least several seconds. During aircraft maneuvers, the main body part affected by excessive force is the cardiovascular system. The skeleton and soft tissues can withstand such stress without harm. The circulatory system, however, consists of elastic blood vessels and needs well-defined blood pressure and volume to perform properly. Excessive G forces such as those experienced in prolonged acceleration can disrupt normal circulatory function, possibly resulting in a decreased level of consciousness.

**Physiological Effects of +Gz Acceleration**

4-19. Positive Gz is acceleration in a headward direction, such as in a climbing maneuver. However, individuals are more aware of inertial force that acts in the opposite direction toward the feet. Crewmembers experience +Gz during pullout from a dive or execution of a high, banking turn.

4-20. During a maneuver that produces +Gz, body weight increases in direct proportion to the magnitude of the force. For example, a 200 pound person weighs 800 pounds during a 4 +Gz maneuver. That is, an aircraft accelerating upward with 4 Gs creates an inertial force on the 200 pound pilot in the opposite direction that pushes the pilot downward into the seat making him “weigh” 800 pounds. Normal activities are greatly curtailed under these conditions. The arms and legs feel heavy, the cheeks sag, and the body becomes
incapable of free movement. In fact, a pilot cannot escape unassisted from a spinning aircraft if the magnitude of the force exceeds 2 to 3+Gz. This is the primary reason for the implementation of ejection seats in tactical jet aircraft.

4-21. Internal organs are pulled downward during +Gz maneuvers. The increased weight of the internal organs pulls the diaphragm downward, increases relaxed thoracic volume, and disturbs the mechanics of respiration.

4-22. Unconsciousness can result when a force of 5 +Gz is applied to the body. During +Gz maneuvers, blood is pulled toward the feet and away from the brain resulting in decreased performance of the aircrew and possibly loss of consciousness (passing out). Figure 4-5, page 4-6, shows the effects of 1 +Gz to 5 +Gz conditions.

4-23. At about 4 +Gz—the point at which vision is completely lost before a loss of consciousness—blackout occurs. Resting pressure in the eye (intraocular pressure) is about 20mm/Hg. When a positive G-force is sufficient to reduce systolic arterial blood pressure in the head to 20mm/Hg, intraocular pressure causes the collapse of retinal arteries. The retinas cease to function as the blood supply fails, and vision narrows from the periphery. At about 4 to 4.5 Gz, vision disappears and blackout occurs. When the force reaches about 5 +Gz, cerebral blood flow stops and unconsciousness ensues. Therefore, the sequence of events following exposure to +Gz is the dimming of vision, blackout, and then unconsciousness.

4-24. The effects described above are usually progressive, as shown in figure 4-6, page 4-7. In relaxed subjects in the human centrifuge, for example, the first symptoms from increased +Gz forces occur at 2.5 to 4 +Gz and involve a graying or dimming of visual fields. At slightly higher accelerations (4 to 4.5 +Gz), blackout occurs and individuals can no longer see although they remain conscious. The retinal arteries have collapsed, but some blood still flows through the brain’s blood vessels. At 4.5 to 5 +Gz, unconsciousness occurs.

4-25. Blood pools in the lower extremities, and there is a relative loss of blood volume and blood pressure to the brain. Stagnant hypoxia and hypoxic hypoxia, caused by unoxygenated blood from impaired respiration, also occur. Blood O2 saturation can fall from the normal 98 percent to 85 percent during an exposure of 7 +Gz for 45 seconds.
4-26. With the loss of blood pressure and induced hypoxic state combined, it can take up to 1 minute following the end of acceleration for an individual to recover. After regaining consciousness, the crewmember might still experience a period of disorientation and memory loss for some time.

INDIVIDUAL TOLERANCES

4-27. Although G-force tolerance limits are relatively constant from one person to another, certain factors decrease or increase an individual’s tolerance to +Gz. These factors are classified as decremental and incremental.

Decremental Factors

4-28. Any factor that reduces the body’s overall efficiency, especially that of the circulatory system, causes a marked reduction in an individual’s tolerance to +Gz. Loss of blood volume, varicose veins, and decreased blood pressure (chronic hypotension) can affect the circulatory system. Self-imposed stress such as that caused by alcohol abuse also affects an individual’s tolerance to +Gz.

Incremental Factors

4-29. The L-1 maneuver is an anti-G straining maneuver (AGSM) that increases a crewmember’s G tolerance and offers protection that does not overstress the larynx. In this maneuver, crewmembers maintain a normal upright sitting position, tense the skeletal muscles, and simultaneously attempt to exhale against a closed glottis at 2- to 3-second intervals. Rotary-wing crewmembers experiencing grayout conditions will benefit from this maneuver.

PHYSIOLOGICAL EFFECTS OF -Gz ACCELERATION

4-30. When accelerative force acts on the body in a direction toward the feet (as would be experienced in a rapid descent), -Gz occurs. In this case, the accelerative, or centripetal, force acts toward the axis of the turn. Actually, -Gz does not present a great problem in military flying. Because it is an uncomfortable experience, pilots tend to avoid it.

4-31. Negative acceleration, or the inertial force applied from foot to head, causes a sharp rise in arterial and venous pressures at the head level (figure 4-7, page 4-8) Increased pressure within the veins outside the cranial cavity could be sufficient to rupture the thin-walled veins, or small veins. Intracranial venous pressure also rises, but it is counterbalanced by an accompanying rise in intracranial cerebral spinal fluid pressure.
pressure. Therefore, there is little actual danger of intracranial hemorrhage or cerebral vascular damage as long as the skull remains intact. Hemorrhages within the eye present the primary source of damage from -Gz. Distension of the jugular and sinus veins and conjunctiva is caused by -Gz.

4-32. Sudden acceleration producing a force of 3 -Gz reaches the limit of human tolerance. When such a force is applied, venous pressure of 100mm/Hg develops and causes small conjunctival bleeding and marked discomfort in the head region.

4-33. Under -Gz, the blood is hindered from flowing back down the jugular veins into the heart, but the arterial blood flow to the head is enhanced. The visual effect of this “over supply” of blood is a loss of vision due to “Red Out”.

![Diagram of negative acceleration](image)

**Figure 4-7. Physiological effects of -G2 acceleration**

4-34. If sufficiently prolonged, gravitational pull in the foot-to-head direction leads to eventual circulatory distress. Blood pools in the head and neck regions, which results in the passage of fluid from the blood to the head and neck tissues. In addition, the return of blood to the heart becomes inadequate due to the loss of effective blood volume. Therefore, blood stagnates in the head and neck. The cerebral-arterial and venous pressure differential is inadequate to sustain consciousness.

**PHYSIOLOGICAL EFFECTS OF ±Gx ACCELERATION**

4-35. Transverse G occurs when accelerative force impacts across the body at right angles to the long axis. Inertial force crosses the body in the opposite direction. Crewmembers undergo mild transverse acceleration during takeoffs and landings.

4-36. Individuals are more tolerant of forces received in the positive or ±Gx axis than those received in the other axes because transverse G interferes very little with blood flow. Extreme values of transverse G (12 to 15±G) acting for 5 seconds or more can displace organs or shift the heart’s position and interfere with respiration.

4-37. At levels above 7+Gx, breathing becomes more difficult because of the effect on chest movement. Some individuals, however, have withstood levels of 20 +G for several seconds with no severe difficulty.

**PHYSIOLOGICAL EFFECTS OF ±Gy ACCELERATION**

4-38. The human body has minimal tolerance to Gy (right- or left-lateral) acceleration. In general, most aircraft do not apply significant lateral accelerative forces; therefore, this type of G-force is of little significance during low-magnitude acceleration.
PHYSIOLOGICAL EFFECTS OF HIGH-MAGNITUDE ACCELERATION AND DECELERATION

4-39. High-magnitude acceleration and deceleration affect aircraft accident survivability. High-magnitude acceleration occurs when acceleration exceeds 10 Gs and lasts for less than 1 second. The effects of high-magnitude acceleration usually are the result of linear acceleration. The terms acceleration and deceleration (negative acceleration) are synonymous when used to describe the forces encountered in aircraft crashes, ejection-seat operations, and parachute-opening shock.

HIGH-MAGNITUDE ACCELERATION

4-40. Adverse effects and injury result from the abruptness and magnitude of forces. Other factors include the body area to which the force is applied and the extent of distortion in shearing, compressing, or stretching body structures. The severity of effects progresses from discomfort, incapacitation, minor injury, and irreversible injury to lethal injury. A thorough examination of the causes of injury and effects on the body is essential to determining survival limits and devising protective and preventive measures.

HIGH-MAGNITUDE DECELERATION

4-41. Several factors cause the adverse effects of high-magnitude decelerative forces. These factors include—

- Degree of acceleration intensity, known as the “peak G.”
- Peak G duration and total deceleration time.
- Rate of acceleration application or onset, known as the “jolt.” The jolt, expressed in feet per second or Gs per second, is the rate of change of acceleration or the rate of onset of accelerative forces.
- Direction or axis of force application, which determines whether acceleration or deceleration occurs.

CRASH SEQUENCE

4-42. Occupant survival during the crash sequence depends on three criteria. These criteria are crash forces transmitted to the occupants, occupiable living space, and aircraft design features.

Crash Forces

4-43. The intensity of the decelerative force to which the body is subjected is not a single decelerative G. Instead, crash forces produce a series of decelerations at various G loads until all motion is stopped. These crash forces occur in all three axes (Gx, Gy, and Gz) at the same time (figure 4-8, page 4-10). Tolerance limits to high-magnitude deceleration vary with force duration and direction. The human body is far more vulnerable to injury when exposed to a series of high-G shocks in all three axes and can withstand these forces for only an extremely short time (less than 0.1 second). If this time is exceeded, injury or death occurs.
Occupiable Living Space

4-44. Occupiable living space influences survivability and must not be compromised by either airframe failure or possible penetration of the cabin area by outside objects. If human tolerance limits to decelerative forces are exceeded or living space is lost, accident survivability decreases significantly. Certain design features can be built into aircraft to absorb crash forces and provide maximum protection to crewmembers during an accident. The UH-60 Black Hawk provides a good example of crashworthy design (figure 4-9, page 4-11).
Aircraft Design Features

4-45. Container, restraint systems, environment, energy absorption, and postcrash protection (CREEP) are design features that promote crash survival:

- **C-Container.** An aircraft must be designed with an effective protective shell around the occupants. Its maximum structural and component weight should be below the occupants to reduce cabin crushing by inertial loading. The airframe should contain crushable material to attenuate crash forces before they are transmitted to crewmembers. Fuel cells (tanks) should be of crushworthy design and protected by the airframe to prevent outside objects from penetrating them.

- **R-Restraint Systems.** Restraint systems should attenuate crash forces and protect the occupants in all flight conditions. These systems should be comfortable to wear and not interfere with cockpit duties. The head is the most likely point of injury in a crash sequence; therefore, occupants should use shoulder harnesses to minimize upper-body motion. A failure in any part of the restraint system—seat, seat belt, or anchor points—results in a higher degree of exposure to injury.

- **E-Environment.** The cockpit and cabin area must be made less lethal to the occupants, to include adequate equipment restraints for withstanding crash forces.

- **E-Energy Absorption.** With their energy-absorbing features, aircraft are designed to withstand disruptive forces. Some of these features include the aircraft undercarriage, landing gear, and seats that deform during a crash sequence. These features modify high peak G loads of short duration into more survivable G loads of longer duration.

- **P-Postcrash Protection.** Two major postcrash factors must be considered in aircraft design: fire and evacuation. The crashworthy fuel system has drastically reduced the fire hazard in Army aircraft accidents. However, timely evacuation is still desirable. Timeliness in evacuating aircraft occupants who survive an impact is often governed by the adequacy of emergency exits. Other factors that enhance timely evacuation are convenience of location, ease of operation, and adequacy of markings.
PREVENTIVE MEASURES

4-46. The design of modern aircraft and aviation protective equipment incorporates a number of principles aimed at the prevention of injuries following a crash sequence.

INCREASE THE AREA TO WHICH FORCE IS APPLIED

4-47. This measure is accomplished through a variety of methods. The HGU-56/P protective helmet distributes pressure over a larger area and reduces the chance of head injury. Seat belts with shoulder harnesses distribute decelerative forces over a larger area of the body and help prevent hazardous contact with the cabin environment. Backward seating arrangements also distribute decelerative forces normally found in a crash sequence.

INCREASE THE DISTANCE OVER WHICH DECELERATION OCCURS

4-48. The aircraft’s built-in design features can absorb and dissipate much kinetic energy during a crash. These features increase the distance over which deceleration occurs.

ALIGN THE BODY TO TAKE ADVANTAGE OF THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM’S STRUCTURAL STRENGTH

4-49. Correct alignment of the body is a preventive measure that can be taken during a crash. Crewmembers can align their bodies to take advantage of the musculoskeletal system’s structural strength by properly using seat belts, shoulder harnesses, and the crash position (with the body bent forward) ensures the strongest body parts absorb crash forces.
Chapter 5

Toxic Hazards in Aviation

“Poison is in everything, and no thing is without poison. The dosage makes it either a poison or a remedy.”

-Paracelsus b. 1493 – Father of Toxicology

The toxic effects of chemicals in the aviation environment can lead to human error, the leading cause of aviation accidents. The exposure of crewmembers to toxins during flight can range from a sudden, incapacitating event after acute (short-term) exposure to long-term health effects secondary to chronic (long-term) exposure. Aviation personnel must understand the dangers and recognize the subtle and insidious effects of toxic hazards. The flight surgeon or aeromedical physician assistant educates aircrews in the prevention of toxic exposure and treatment of flight personnel exposed to known toxic substances.

SECTION I – AVIATION TOXICOLOGY PRINCIPLES

5-1. In aviation, the unique toxicological environment is limited primarily to the enclosed space of the aircraft. This chapter’s focus is on aircraft cockpit exposures, including some important issues facing Class III (petroleum, oil, and lubricant) supply personnel.

ACUTE TOXICITY

5-2. The potentially most damaging toxicological exposure during flight is an acute, high-dose exposure to a toxic agent. Cabin air quality can change rapidly or insidiously. Air quality changes may be due to generation of toxic substances from fluid leaks, fire, and/or variations in altitude and ventilation rates.

5-3. Exposure to combustion products from burning wire insulation or engine exhaust can degrade a pilot’s ability to function. Two types of acute inflight exposure are—

- Sudden, incapacitating exposure.
- Subtle, performance decrement exposure.

5-4. Exposure to toxic chemicals has contributed to some accidents that were erroneously attributed to pilot error. During the most demanding flight modes, the balance between critical flight tasks and human abilities is sometimes delicate and fragile even for well-trained crews.

CHRONIC TOXICITY

5-5. Chronic (long-term) exposure to potentially toxic agents can occur during ground support and aviation operations. This type of exposure, which occurs over an extended period of time, does not necessarily cause immediate health effects. Chronic exposure can lead to adverse health outcomes many years later. The handling of munitions and propellants and storage of fuels and fluids pose special problems.

TIME AND DOSE RELATIONSHIP

5-6. With most substances, the physiological effects of exposure depend on chemical concentration and duration and route of exposure. As concentration increases, the interval between initial exposure and onset of symptoms decreases. The adverse physical effects of many chemicals change as concentration increases. At high concentrations, gases such as nitrogen dioxide, numerous petrochemicals, and other mechanical
fluids are highly irritating to the upper respiratory tract, nasal passages, and mucous membranes. At lower concentrations, these chemicals might have little to no effect.

PHYSIOCHEMICAL FACTORS

5-7. The kidneys and liver are the principal organs that detoxify chemicals within the body. The body attempts to change toxic and foreign substances into less toxic material it can use or eliminate. In some cases, a more toxic substance is produced with adverse effects. For example, when ethylene glycol is ingested, the body produces insoluble oxalic acid crystals it cannot excrete. This may cause kidney damage that can lead to death. Each type of tissue absorbs differing amounts of chemical substances as they enter the body. For example, fat-soluble compounds such as carbon tetrachloride and most aviation fuels tend to accumulate in nervous system tissues, while heavy metals, such as lead and cadmium, accumulate in and damage the kidneys.

ENTRY POINTS

5-8. Toxic agents enter the body through inhalation into the lungs, ingestion into the gastrointestinal tract, or absorption or injection through the skin and mucous membranes. The most common route of entry in the aviation environment is inhalation. Crewmembers often are in close contact with volatile fuels and other potentially hazardous petroleum products such as oils, lubricants, and hydraulic fluids. For example, a well-intentioned crew chief might choose to eat while working on the engine deck without realizing the potential danger of ingesting toxins through contaminated food or water. A crewmember, hurried after aircraft refueling, might not wash his or her hands and then smoke a cigarette and inhale hazardous petroleum vapors. Acute toxic exposures are characteristically related to inhalation or ingestion, whereas toxin exposure through skin absorption usually produces symptoms only after chronic, repeated exposures. Contact dermatitis, an inflammatory rash of the skin, is the most common health effect from skin contact.

PRE-EXISTING CONDITIONS

5-9. People with organ impairment (such as liver or lung damage), sickle cell disease, or an active disease process are generally more susceptible to toxic agents.

INDIVIDUAL VARIABILITY

5-10. Due to individual variability, not everyone may respond the same way to toxic exposure. Metabolic rate, fat content, and physical fitness level varies greatly among individuals. In addition, some people have genetic variations that predispose them to adverse health effects at lower concentrations of toxic substance exposure. Therefore, physical responses to exposure vary considerably. For example, in an environment in which several people are in daily contact with a specific chemical at a low concentration, only one person might exhibit signs or symptoms because of his or her unique physiologic characteristics.

ALLOWABLE DEGREE OF BODILY IMPAIRMENT

5-11. Even a slight degree of inflight impairment is hazardous to crewmember performance of required tasks. The flight surgeon, working with the industrial hygienist, should be aware of chemicals within the flight line area and ensure personnel exposure remains within safe limits.

THRESHOLD LIMIT VALUES

5-12. Threshold limit values are the maximum average airborne concentration of a hazardous material to which healthy adult workers can be exposed without experiencing significant adverse health effects. It is often expressed as a time weighted average (TWA) such as an 8-hour workday and 40-hour workweek averaged over a working lifetime. Threshold limit values usually are measured in parts per million for gases and vapors and milligrams per cubic meter for fumes and dusts.
Toxic Hazards in Aviation

CEILING CONCENTRATION
5-13. Ceiling value: The highest concentration of a toxic substance in air that should not be exceeded at any time during the workday. This value is often used in conjunction with the TWA.

SHORT-TERM EXPOSURE LIMITS
5-14. Short-term exposure limit (STEL) value: A TWA concentration over 15 minutes that should not be exceeded even if the 8-hour TWA is within the standards. TWA-STELs are given for contaminants for which short-term hazards are known.

BODY DETOXIFICATION
5-15. The human body has varied and intricate chemical defense mechanisms. Upon entry of a toxic substance, the body immediately begins to reduce the substance’s concentration through multiple processes. These processes include metabolism (the chemical transformations that maintain life), detoxification, and excretion. The flight surgeon must be familiar with the metabolic pathways of well-known poisons and understand the physical and psychological symptoms of subtle chemical intoxication. For example, the amount of carbon monoxide eliminated by the body during a single, non-continuous exposure decreases by 50 percent every 4 hours without medical intervention.

SECTION II – AIRCRAFT ATMOSPHERE CONTAMINATION
5-16. Depending on the circumstances, an aircraft’s interior might contain various contaminants that could pose risks to crewmembers. Aircrews and ground crews transporting hazardous cargo should refer to AR 50-5, AR 50-6, AR 95-1, AFJI 11-204/AR 95.27, and TM 38-250. Information concerning chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear environments is beyond the scope of this field manual but can be found in ATP 3-11.32 and TM 3-4240-542-13&P (FM 4-02.283/NTRP 4-02.21/ARMAN 44-161(1)/MCRP 4-11.1B, FM 4-02.285/MCRP 4-11.1A/NTRP 4-02.22/AFTTP(I) 3-2.69, and FM 8-284/NAVMED P-5042/AFMAN(I) 44-156/MCRP 4-11.1C contain more detailed medical information on chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear environments).

Aircraft atmosphere contamination can include—
- Exhaust gases.
- Tetraethyl lead.
- Carbon monoxide.
- Jet propulsion fuels.
- Hydraulic fluid vapors.
- Coolant fluid vapors.
- Engine lubricants.
- Solvents and degreasers.
- Composite materials.
- Fire extinguishing agents (including halogenated hydrocarbons).
- Fluorocarbon plastics and polyurethane.
- Oxygen contamination.

EXHAUST GAS
5-17. The physical relationship of engine positioning to the cockpit is important. Depending on aircraft age and the power plant used (jet or reciprocating), there are a wide range of potential cockpit air contaminants caused by exhaust gases. Single-engine, piston-type aircraft with the engine located directly in front of the fuselage are subject to greater cockpit contamination than multiengine aircraft with lateral engines. Reciprocating engines uniformly produce much more carbon monoxide than modern jet engines. Liquid-cooled, single engine airplanes are less likely to be contaminated by exhaust gases than air-cooled, radial-engine airplanes.
CARBON MONOXIDE

5-18. The initial effects of carbon monoxide can be subtle with insidious progression of symptoms that can lead to incapacitation and death. Carbon monoxide, a product of incomplete fuel combustion, is the most common gaseous poison found in the aviation environment. An engine that yields complete combustion (total burning of fuel in the presence of sufficient O\textsubscript{2}) produces only CO\textsubscript{2}. Though, in practice, complete combustion is rarely achieved. As the fuel-to-air ratio decreases (for example, increased O\textsubscript{2} compared to fuel) and complete combustion increases, the percentage of CO\textsubscript{2} in exhaust gas rises while the percentage of carbon monoxide declines. Conversely, as the mixture becomes richer (increasing the fuel-to-air ratio), the percentage of carbon monoxide in exhaust gas increases. Carbon monoxide itself is a colorless, odorless gas slightly lighter than air but should be suspected whenever exhaust odors are detected.

5-19. Carbon monoxide is the most common cause of both intentional and unintentional poisoning in the United States. More deaths have been attributed to carbon monoxide than any other toxic gas. Carbon monoxide acts as a tissue asphyxiant that produces hypoxia at both sea level and altitude. Carbon monoxide’s toxicity arises primarily by interfering with the blood’s ability to deliver O\textsubscript{2} to the tissues.Carbon monoxide binds with hemoglobin 256 times stronger than O\textsubscript{2}, greatly reducing hemoglobin’s ability to pick up and release O\textsubscript{2}. The carbon monoxide concentration in blood is based on a variety of factors, including gas concentration, respiratory rate, hemoglobin-carbon monoxide saturation, and exposure duration. Table 5-1 shows the body’s physiological responses to various concentrations of carbon monoxide.

Table 5-1. Physiological responses to various carbon monoxide concentrations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon monoxide concentration in air (ppm*)</th>
<th>CoHb saturation in blood (%)</th>
<th>Exposure time</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-50</td>
<td>No appreciable effect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-100</td>
<td>0-17</td>
<td>5-6 hours</td>
<td>Weakness, headache, dizziness, loss of visual acuity, nausea, and vomiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-300</td>
<td>23-30</td>
<td>4-5 hours</td>
<td>Same as above, with lack of muscular coordination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400-600</td>
<td>36-44</td>
<td>3-4 hours</td>
<td>Same as above, with increased pulse and respiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700-1,000</td>
<td>47-53</td>
<td>1.5-3 hours</td>
<td>Coma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,100-1,500</td>
<td>55-60</td>
<td>0.5-1 hour</td>
<td>Depressed heart rate and respiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,000-10,000</td>
<td>73-76</td>
<td>2-15 minutes</td>
<td>Death</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5-20. A relatively low concentration of carbon monoxide in the air can, in time, produce high blood concentrations of carbon monoxide. For example, a resting person who inhales air with a 0.5-percent carbon monoxide concentration for 30 minutes will have a 45-percent blood saturation. As noted in Table 5-1, this saturation is sufficient to produce a near-coma condition.

5-21. Reduced O\textsubscript{2} concentration in the air and increased temperature or humidity can increase the concentration of carbon monoxide-bound hemoglobin. Any of these changes or an increase in physical activity can accelerate carbon monoxide’s toxic effects.

5-22. The effects of carbon monoxide on the human body vary. Symptoms of carbon monoxide intoxication include—
Tremors.
Headache.
Weakness.
Joint pain.
Hoarseness.
Nervousness.
Muscular cramps.
Muscular twitching.
Loss of visual acuity.
Speech and hearing impairment.
Mental confusion and disorientation.

5-23. The symptoms of carbon monoxide poisoning are the same as those of hypemic hypoxia. Of particular importance to aviators is the loss of visual acuity. Peripheral vision and, more importantly, night vision is significantly decreased, even with blood carbon monoxide saturation as low as 10 percent.

5-24. The dangers of carbon monoxide rise sharply with increasing altitude. When experienced separately, a mild degree of hypoxic hypoxia (caused by increased altitude and decreased partial pressures of $O_2$) or exposure to small amounts of carbon monoxide can be harmless. When experienced simultaneously, however, their effects become cumulative and can cause serious pilot impairment with possible loss of aircraft control.

5-25. For practical purposes, the elimination rate of carbon monoxide depends on respiratory volume and the percentage of $O_2$ in inspired (inhaled) air. Smoking one to three cigarettes in rapid succession or one and one-half packs per day can raise an individual’s carbon monoxide hemoglobin saturation to 10 percent. At sea level, it can take a full day to eliminate that small percentage of carbon monoxide because carbon monoxide gas is reduced by a factor of only 50 percent about every 4 hours.

5-26. When flight personnel suspect the presence of carbon monoxide in their aircraft, they should turn off all exhaust heaters, inhale 100-percent $O_2$ if available, and land as soon as practical. After landing, they can investigate the source and evaluate their own possible symptoms of carbon monoxide intoxication.

**AVIATION GASOLINE**

5-27. Aviation gasoline, a mixture of hydrocarbons and additives such as tetraethyl lead and xylene, is used only as an emergency fuel. A gallon of evaporated aviation gasoline will form about 30 cubic feet of vapors at sea level. Personnel exposed to these vapors might suffer adverse physical or psychological reactions.

5-28. Aviation gasoline vapors, which are heavier than air, are readily absorbed in the respiratory system and can produce symptoms in exposed personnel after only a few minutes. Unconsciousness can occur if vapors equal to one-tenth of the concentration that could cause combustion or explosion are inhaled for more than a short time. The maximum safe concentration for exposure to ordinary fuel vapors is about 500 parts per million, or 0.05 percent. However, aviation gasoline vapors are at least twice as toxic as ordinary fuel vapors. Symptoms of exposure to aviation gasoline vapors include—

- Burning and tearing of the eyes.
- Restlessness.
- Excitement.
- Disorientation.
- Speech, vision, or hearing disorders.
- Convulsions.
- Coma.
- Death.
TETRAETHYL LEAD IN AVIATION GASOLINE

5-29. Tetraethyl lead, an antiknock (uncontrolled fuel detonation) substance, is highly toxic. Poisoning can occur through both skin absorption and vapor inhalation. Tetraethyl lead poisoning primarily affects the central nervous system. Symptoms include insomnia, mental irritability, and instability. In less dramatic cases, sleep interruption with restlessness and terrifying dreams can occur. Other symptoms include nausea, vomiting, muscle pain and weakness, tremors, and visual difficulty. The amount of tetraethyl lead in aviation gasoline is so small (only about 4.6 cubic centimeters per gallon, or about one teaspoon) that encountering a lead hazard through normal handling is remote. However, poisoning has resulted from personnel entering fuel storage tanks containing concentrated amounts of tetraethyl lead within accumulated sludge. Maintenance personnel who work (welding, buffing, or grinding) on engines that have burned leaded gasoline are at risk of significant exposure to lead compounds.

JET PROPULSION FUELS

5-30. Jet propulsion (JP)-4, JP-5; and JP-8 are mixtures of hydrocarbons that produce different grades of kerosene. Each JP fuel has a specific vapor pressure and flashpoint. JP fuels do not contain tetraethyl lead. The recommended threshold limit for JP fuel vapors is 500ppm; however, toxic symptoms can occur below explosive levels, so JP fuel intoxication is possible even in the absence of a fire hazard. Excessive inhalation of JP fuels degrades central nervous system function and poses an irritant hazard to skin and mucous membranes. JP fuels can produce narcotic effects in high enough concentrations.

HYDRAULIC FLUID

5-31. Hydraulic fluid can be based in petroleum, castor oil, silicon, or phosphate ester. A leak from a hydraulic hose or gauge under pressure up to 1,200 pounds per square inch can produce a finely divided aerosol that diffuses quickly throughout the cockpit. Large leaks can cause liquid to accumulate on the floor. In either case, a high level of aerosolized hydraulic fluid can develop quickly in cockpit air. Like other hydrocarbons, hydraulic fluid can be toxic when inhaled. For example, phosphate ester-based hydraulic fluid has effects identical to military nerve agents known as organophosphates. Increasing temperature or altitude can aggravate the toxic effects of inhaled aerosolized hydraulic fluid. These effects include—

- Irritation of the eyes and respiratory tract.
- Headache.
- Vertigo.
- Nerve dysfunction in the limbs.
- Impairment of judgment and vision.

COOLANT FLUID

5-32. The coolant fluid used in liquid-cooled engines consists of ethylene glycol diluted with water. Ethylene glycol is toxic when ingested; the toxic byproducts of which first affect the central nervous system, the heart, and finally the kidneys. Although volatile, its vapors rarely exert any significant acute toxic effects when inhaled. Respiratory passages can become moderately irritated, however, with continued exposure to ethylene glycol vapors.

5-33. Ruptured coolant lines frequently produce smoke in the cockpit resulting from either engine overheating or leaking fluid. Cockpit smoke is always a concern for pilots—some have abandoned their aircraft because of coolant line leaks. Pure ethylene glycol has a flash point of 177 degrees Fahrenheit; however, the fire hazard from leaking coolant is not especially great because its ethylene glycol content has been diluted with water.

ENGINE LUBRICANTS

5-34. Oil hose connections in aircraft consist of various types of adjustable clamps rather than the pressure-type connections used in the hydraulic system. Hose clamps occasionally break or loosen. When oil escapes
onto hot engine parts, smoke often forms and enters the cockpit. Inhaling hot oil fumes causes symptoms similar to those of carbon monoxide poisoning:

- Headache.
- Nausea.
- Vomiting.
- Irritation of the eyes and upper respiratory passages.

**SOLVENTS AND DEGREASERS**

5-35. Solvents and degreasers are organic bases used to dissolve other petroleum products. Organic solvents irritate the skin (causing contact dermatitis), and they all produce nervous system effects similar to those of general surgery anesthesia. Common solvents and degreasers present in the aviation environment include toluene isocyanates (found in paints, foams, and adhesives) and methyl ethyl ketone, which is specified for use in aviation maintenance manuals.

**COMPOSITE MATERIALS**

5-36. Composite materials are used in many Army airframes due to their strength, thermal resistance, and light weight. These composite materials are composed of fibers and resins.

5-37. Fibers include carbon graphite, boron, Kevlar, and fiberglass that are generally safe as long as they remain intact. Disruption of the fiber matrix can occur during a crash or with grinding, scraping, sanding, reworking, or burning. These disruptions create an inhalation and skin and mucous membrane contact hazard. Particles may come in various sizes, but those smaller than 3.5 microns long are more likely to become lodged in the lungs and produce lung disease similar to that caused by asbestos.

5-38. Resins are bonding agents that provide insulation and the physically resistant properties of composites. Epoxy is an example of a resin. The primary hazard posed by resin vapors is inhalation during the curing process. Resins can cause asthma, skin irritation, and nervous system effects.

**FIRE EXTINGUISHING AGENTS**

5-39. Fire extinguishing agents pose a toxic threat to aircrews fighting fires, especially within enclosed cabins or cockpits. Crewmembers can be exposed to these agents while using portable extinguishers or to gaseous agents in the ventilation system following the discharge of automatic or semiautomatic fire extinguishing systems aboard the aircraft. Ground support personnel are at risk as well, but to a lesser extent because of their non-enclosed environmental conditions. The three chemical classes of fire extinguishing agents in current use are—

- Halogenated hydrocarbons.
- CO₂.
- Aqueous film forming foam.

**HALOGENATED HYDROCARBONS**

5-40. The halogenated hydrocarbon group is composed of carbon tetrachloride, chlorobromomethane, dibromodifluoromethane, bromotrifluoromethane, and numerous other hydrocarbons bound to the halogens fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine. Because of their toxicity, many of these halogenated hydrocarbons are no longer used to fight fires. Halon is a general classification of halogenated carbon compounds that are still used for fire suppression.

5-41. Frequently found on the flight line, Halon is also used in automatic fire suppression systems designed for large electrical and computer areas. It offers excellent fire suppression properties without chemical residuals and is relatively nontoxic to personnel, except when discharged extensively in an enclosed space. Within a confined area, Halon acts as a simple asphyxiant, displacing O₂ from the room upon release. In addition, the discharge of Halon from a compressed state can generate impulse noise levels greater than 160 decibels. Because of its strong tendency to deplete the atmospheric ozone layer, Halon is being
removed from all areas except those deemed mission essential. Under extremely high temperatures, Halon can decompose into other, more toxic gases such as hydrogen fluoride, hydrogen chloride, hydrogen bromide, and phosgene analogues.

5-42. Phosgene (a thermal byproduct of Halon) and carbon tetrachloride significantly irritate the lower respiratory tract. Exposure to less than lethal concentrations of phosgene can permanently damage the respiratory system.

**CARBON DIOXIDE**

5-43. Large quantities of CO$_2$ are required to extinguish a fire; therefore, it can be hazardous when used as a fire extinguishing agent. At low concentrations, CO$_2$ acts as a respiratory stimulant. Inhaling a 2- to 3-percent concentration results in discomfort and shortness of breath and is tolerable for approximately 20 to 25 minutes. A person can tolerate a concentration of up to 5 percent for 10 minutes. A concentration above 20 percent can cause unconsciousness within several minutes.

5-44. Initial acute exposure of less than 2 percent CO$_2$ can result in emotional excitation or increases in heart rate, blood pressure, and breathing rate and depth. These effects are followed by—

- Drowsiness.
- Headache.
- Increasing difficulty in respiration.
- Vertigo.
- Indigestion.
- Muscle weakness.
- Lack of coordination.
- Poor judgment.

5-45. At concentrations of 10 percent or above, crewmembers can experience mental degradation, collapse, and death. If the concentration increases slowly, symptoms appear more slowly and have less effect because the body’s defenses have time to act. Although the individual is aware of the changes occurring, he or she might be unable to assess the situation and take corrective action.

5-46. Carbon dioxide is heavier than air and accumulates in lower areas of enclosed spaces, causing normal air to become diluted (low O$_2$ concentration) and allowing the CO$_2$ to act as a simple asphyxiant. Because of this risk, crewmembers must be familiar with the hazards and symptoms of CO$_2$ poisoning. The cabin area must be ventilated quickly when initial symptoms are detected, and the crew should use 100-percent O$_2$ if available.

**AQUEOUS FILM-FORMING FOAM**

5-47. Aqueous film-forming foam is a soapy, surfactant-based material used to physically separate a flammable liquid (for example, fuel) from its O$_2$ source. Even if ingested it is essentially nontoxic, but the foam produces irritation in the eyes and skin similar to that caused by household detergents.

**FLUOROCARBON PLASTICS AND POLYURETHANE**

5-48. Fluorocarbon plastics are used in all aircraft as corrosion-resistant coatings and insulation for radio wires and other electronic equipment. Polyurethane is used in cockpit and cabin interiors. These materials are chemically inert at ordinary temperatures but decompose at high temperatures and pose a problem in aircraft only when a fire occurs. At about 662 degrees Fahrenheit, these materials release fluorine gas that reacts with moisture to form hydrogen fluoride, a highly corrosive acid. Above 700 degrees Fahrenheit, a small quantity of highly toxic perfluoroisobutylene is released. Phosgene and cyanide also are produced through thermal decomposition. Rapid, uncontrolled burning of fluorocarbon plastics yields more toxic products than controlled thermal decomposition. If an aircraft fire occurs, crewmembers must wear O$_2$ masks (if available) to protect themselves against fumes from fluorocarbon plastics. These agents are very irritating to the eyes, nose, and respiratory tract.
OXYGEN CONTAMINATION

5-49. Perceived O₂ contamination can affect the performance of aircrews that routinely fly high-altitude profiles. Aviators often report objectionable odors in breathing systems using compressed gaseous O₂. These odors, while not present in lethal concentrations, may produce nausea and vomiting. However, some odors are neither offensive nor disagreeable, as indicated by such descriptive terms as stale, sweet, cool, and fresh. In situations other than accidental or gross contamination, O₂ analysis has indicated the presence of small amounts of a number of contaminants. These contaminants include water vapor, methane, CO₂, acetylene, ethylene, nitrous oxide, traces of hydrocarbons, and other unidentified substances. Odors also have been attributed to trichlorethylene, a solvent that previously was used to clean O₂ tank cylinders. Either singly or in combination, these contaminants never appear to reach concentrations toxic to humans, although distinctive symptoms such as headache, nausea, vomiting, and disorientation have been reported. However, the problem with perceived O₂ contamination is most often psychological rather than physiological. Aviators might become more concerned and apprehensive during flight about their O₂ source. This preoccupation can lead to stress-induced hyperventilation or loss of situational awareness. If pilots are concerned about this issue, they should land as soon as practicable and evaluate their O₂ equipment.
This page intentionally left blank.
Chapter 6

Effects of Temperature Extremes on the Human Body

Body temperature must be maintained within narrow limits, usually between 95 and 100 degrees Fahrenheit. However, heat injuries and hypothermia can occur within much narrower limits. Extreme temperatures can have a devastating effect on the body’s ability to control its temperature. Exposure to temperature extremes in the aviation environment impairs aircrew effectiveness and intensifies other stresses such as hypoxia and fatigue. Extreme climates can cause uncomfortable or unbearable cockpit conditions, as can atmospheric temperature or altitude changes. Interior aircraft ventilation and heating and protective equipment also can create temperature extremes. This chapter briefly covers aviation operations in extreme climates.

SECTION I – HEAT IN THE AVIATION ENVIRONMENT

6-1. Army aviation operations generally take place at low altitudes associated with extremely high temperatures and humidity. Heat can seriously hamper mission requirements and hinder accomplishment of complex tasks. Army aircraft construction and unit locations increase the potential for heat stress problems.

RADIANT HEAT

6-2. Solar radiant heat is the primary heat stress problem in aircraft. Large expanses of glass or Plexiglas™ transmit visible and non-visible radiant energy that produce a greenhouse effect as it is trapped as thermal energy within the cockpit. This thermal energy, stored in the objects of the cockpit, may release this energy at wavelengths that cannot penetrate the glass or Plexiglas™. Therefore, heat accumulates within the cockpit and becomes a significant stress factor at altitudes below 10,000 feet. The cockpit temperature of aircraft parked on airfield ramps can be 50 to 60 degrees Fahrenheit higher than those parked in hangars due to the radiation of solar heat through transparent surfaces.

KINETIC HEAT

6-3. During flight, the aircraft structure can be heated by friction between its surface and the air and by the rise in temperature caused by air compression at the aircraft’s front. Cockpit insulation and cabin air ductwork can reduce effects of kinetic heating.

ELECTRICAL HEAT LOADS AND COOLING SYSTEMS

6-4. The electrical heat load in cockpits is increasing as new high-performance aircraft are developed and fitted with additional improved avionics equipment. The possibility of degraded human performance increases with escalations in cockpit temperature.

6-5. Comfortable limits in the cockpit are between 68 to 72 degrees Fahrenheit and 25 to 50 percent relative humidity, but can vary with personal preferences. To maintain this temperature and humidity range, aircraft must have extra heating and cooling equipment installed, which is expensive in both cost and performance. In general, one pound of extra load on an aircraft requires nine pounds of structure and fuel to fly it.
HEAT TRANSFER

6-6. The body maintains its heat balance with several mechanisms. These mechanisms are radiation, conduction, convection, and evaporation.

RADIATION

6-7. Radiation involves the transfer of heat from an object of higher temperature to an object of lower temperature through space by radiant energy such as infrared (IR) light. The rate of heat transfer depends primarily on the difference between the objects’ temperatures. If an object’s temperature is higher than the temperature of surrounding objects, more heat radiates away from the object than is radiated to it.

CONDUCTION

6-8. Conduction is the transfer of heat between objects of different temperatures that are in direct contact. Here, faster moving (hotter) molecules bump into slow moving (cooler) molecules of adjacent objects increasing their speed and raising their temperature. The objects’ proximity determines the overall rate of conduction.

CONVECTION

6-9. Convection is the transfer of heat from a warmer object in contact with a freely moving liquid or gas that picks up the heat and transfers it to the cooler object. During body heat loss, air molecules move as the body heats surrounding air; the heated air expands and rises as it is displaced by denser, cooler air. Breathing moves heated air to and from your lung is a type of convection and contributes to body temperature regulation.

EVAPORATION

6-10. Evaporative heat loss involves the transformation of a substance from a liquid state (such as sweat) to a gaseous state. Heat is lost when water on the body surface absorbs the body’s heat and evaporates. Evaporation is the most common and generally the most easily understood form of heat loss.

LIMITATIONS

6-11. Radiation, convection, and conduction all suffer one major disadvantage in cooling the body: they become less effective as temperature increases. When the temperature of air and nearby objects exceeds skin temperature, the body gains heat. This excess heat can be dangerous for aviators.

6-12. When ambient temperature increases to about 82 to 84 degrees Fahrenheit, sweat production increases abruptly to offset the increasingly ineffective cooling of radiation, convection, and conduction. At 95 degrees Fahrenheit, sweat evaporation accounts for nearly all heat loss.

6-13. Many factors affect the evaporation process. These factors include—

- Protective clothing.
- Availability of drinking water.
- Relative humidity above 50 percent.
- Environmental temperature above 82 degrees Fahrenheit.

6-14. Relative humidity is the factor that most limits evaporation. At relative humidity of 100 percent, no heat is lost through evaporation. Although the body continues to sweat, it loses only a tiny amount of heat. For example, a person can function all day at a temperature of 115 degrees Fahrenheit with relative humidity of 10 percent if given enough water and electrolytes (salts). If relative humidity rises to 80 percent at the same temperature, that person might be incapacitated within 30 minutes.
HEAT INJURY

6-15. The body undergoes certain physiological changes to counteract heat stress. Blood flow to the skin, increases tremendously to carry heat from the body’s inner core to the surface, where it can be lost to ambient air. Blood flow to other organs such as the kidneys and liver is reduced, and heart rate is increased so the body can maintain adequate blood pressure. As temperature increases, receptors in the skin, brain, and neuromuscular system are stimulated to increase sweat production. Heavy sweating produces 1 pint to 1 quart of sweat per hour; however, heat stress can result in 3 to 4 quarts being produced. If a person does not replace this sweat by drinking liquids, the body rapidly dehydrates, sweat production drops, and body temperature increases, causing further heat injury.

6-16. Individuals vary in their responses to heat stress. Factors that influence physiological responses include the amount of work performed, physical condition, and ability to adapt to the environment. Other factors that might predispose a Soldier to heat injury include—

- Exposure to 2 or 3 days of—
  - Sleep loss.
  - Increased exertion levels.
  - Increased heat exposure.
- Poor fitness.
- Being overweight.
- Minor illness (such as cold symptoms).
- Taking prescribed or over-the-counter medications, supplements, or dietary aids.
- Use of alcohol within the last 24 hours.
- Prior history of heat illness (any heat stroke or more than two episodes of heat exhaustion).
- Skin disorders (such as rash or sunburn).
- Age (greater than 40 years).

6-17. Heat injuries, which range from marginal to critical-catastrophic, include—

- Sunburn: red, hot skin that might blister; victim might experience moderate to severe pain and/or fever.
- Heat rash (prickly heat): red, itchy skin that might be bumpy due to irritation from sweat that is not evaporating.
- Heat cramps: painful skeletal muscle cramps or spasms that primarily affect the legs and arms.
- Heat exhaustion: dizziness, headache, nausea, unsteady walk, weakness, fatigue, rapid pulse, and shortness of breath; heat exhaustion is the most common exertional heat illness.
- Heat stroke: same symptoms as heat exhaustion but more severe; elevated temperature, usually above 104 degrees Fahrenheit; altered mental status with confusion, agitation, delirium, and disorientation; nausea and vomiting; can progress to loss of consciousness, coma, and seizures; heat stroke is a medical emergency that can cause death.

6-18. Additional medical considerations in a hot weather environment are—

- Dehydration.
- Over hydration (hyponatremia).

6-19. Additional information on treating and preventing hot weather injuries can be found in Air Force Pamphlet (AFPAM) 48-152(1)/Technical Bulletin (Medical) (TB MED) 507.

PERFORMANCE IMPAIRMENT

6-20. Heat stress causes general physiological changes and can also impair performance. Even a slight increase in body temperature above normal baseline impairs an individual’s ability to perform complex tasks such as those required to fly an aircraft safely. A body temperature of 101 degrees Fahrenheit roughly doubles an aviator’s error rate. Increases in body temperature generally have the following effects on an aviator:
- Error rates increase.
- Short-term memory becomes less reliable.
- Perceptual and motor skills slow.
- The capacity to perform aviation tasks decreases.
- Reaction and decision times slow.
- The conduct of routine tasks slows.
- Errors of omission are more common.
- Vigilant task performance degrades slightly after 30 minutes and markedly after 2 to 3 hours.

**HEAT STRESS PREVENTION**

6-21. Personnel can take preventive measures to avoid heat stress. They can reduce workload, replace water and salt loss, acclimate properly, and wear protective clothing.

**REPLACE WATER AND SALT LOSS**

6-22. The human body cannot adjust to decreased water intake. Daily water requirements depend on the environment, heat stress, activity level, and duration of exposure. Soldiers must replace the water lost through sweating to avoid heat injury. The body normally absorbs water at a rate of 1.2 to 1.5 quarts per hour. Fluid intake should not exceed 1.5 quarts per hour or 12 quarts per day. Conducting activities in the cool early morning or evening hours can minimize water loss.

6-23. Electrolyte (salt) loss is high in personnel who either have not acclimated or have acclimated but are subject to strenuous activity under heat stress. Replenishing lost electrolytes is important. Eating all meals (including field rations and meals, ready to eat with salt packet) usually provides the body’s salt requirement. Soldiers should not use salt tablets; if larger amounts of salt are required, they should consult their flight surgeon.

**ACCLIMATE**

6-24. Heat acclimation greatly enhances a Soldier’s resistance to heat injury and improves physical work capabilities. A minimum of 2 weeks should be allowed for healthy individuals to acclimate, with progressive increases in heat exposure and physical exertion. Individuals who are less physically fit might require more time to fully acclimate. Significant heat acclimation can be attained in 3 to 5 days. Full heat acclimation takes up to 14 days with 2 to 3 hours per day of carefully supervised exercise in the heat.

**WEAR PROTECTIVE CLOTHING**

6-25. In direct sunlight, an individual should wear loose clothing to allow adequate ventilation and evaporative cooling. In a hot environment, clothing protects an individual from solar radiation but reduces the loss of body heat from convection and conduction. Dark clothing absorbs radiant heat while light clothing reflects it. Individuals should wear headgear to reduce heat load to the head.

**IN-FLIGHT STRESS REDUCTION**

6-26. Army aviation crewmembers are required to work in hot cockpits. Their ability to handle a particular situation depends on the specific aircraft and problem. If crewmembers will be exposed to heat for an extended period, the only alternative might be to terminate the mission to prevent incapacitation (mission termination should be treated as a last resort, however). Crewmembers can minimize inflight heat stress by increasing ventilation and continually replacing fluids.

**INCREASE VENTILATION**

6-27. More than any other crewmember, the pilot must guard against heat stress. When speed, altitude, and mission permit, the pilot should open a window or canopy and direct cool air onto the head and neck to reduce heat buildup.
CONTINUALLY REPLACE FLUIDS

6-28. Fluid intake during flight helps prevent dehydration and makes up for profuse sweating. Crewmembers should be encouraged to drink fluids as conditions permit, especially in anticipation of physical exertion.

SECTION II – COLD IN THE AVIATION ENVIRONMENT

6-29. Although heat stress causes the most significant problems for crewmembers, cold weather also adversely affects the body. Aircrews must understand how the body reacts to cold temperature extremes.

COLD INJURY

6-30. Many factors influence the incidence of cold injury. If troops are in a static defensive position, the incidence of injury drops as they have time to take care of their bodies. Factors that can increase an individual’s susceptibility to cold injury include—

- Previous cold injury or other significant physical injuries.
- Use of tobacco, nicotine, or alcohol.
- Skipping meals or poor nutrition.
- Low activity.
- Fatigue and sleep deprivation.
- Little experience or training in cold weather.
- Ignoring warning signs.

6-31. Cold weather injuries include—

- Chilblain: acutely red, swollen, hot, tender skin, usually accompanied by itching.
- Immersion foot (trench foot): cold, numb feet that might progress to a sensation of heat with shooting pains; victim might also experience swelling, redness, and bleeding; Soldiers with suspected immersion foot should seek medical attention immediately.
- Frostbite, which can be superficial or deep:
  - Superficial—Involves only the skin, which usually appears pale, yellowish, and waxy-looking (grayish in dark-skinned Soldiers); the skin’s surface feels very stiff or hard, but underlying tissue is soft.
  - Deep—Extends beyond the first layer of skin and can include the bone; discoloration is the same as superficial frostbite but underlying tissue is hard; large areas might appear purple; deep frostbite is a medical emergency that requires immediate evacuation to a medical facility.
- Hypothermia: shivering may or may not be present; victim might exhibit drowsiness, mental slowness, or lack of coordination, which can progress to unconsciousness, irregular heartbeat, and death; hypothermia is the most serious cold injury and victims must be evacuated immediately.
- Snow blindness: a temporary condition that results in pain, redness, or a watery or gritty feeling in the eyes.

6-32. First aid for cold injuries depends on the injury. In frostbite, a superficial cold injury can be adequately treated by warming the affected part with body heat. This warming can be done by covering cheeks with hands, placing hands under armpits, or placing feet under a buddy’s clothing next to the abdomen. The injured part should not be massaged, exposed to a fire or stove, rubbed with snow, slapped, chafed, or soaked in cold water. Individuals should avoid walking when they have cold-injured feet. Deep frostbite is very serious and requires more aggressive first aid to avoid or minimize the loss of parts of fingers, toes, hands, or feet. The sequence for treating cold injuries depends on whether the condition is life threatening; the priority is to remove injured Soldiers from the cold to a warm area. More information on treating and preventing cold weather injuries can be found in TB MED 508.
COLD INJURY PREVENTION

6-33. Some general measures can be taken to prevent all types of cold injury. Individuals can—

- Keep their body dry.
- Limit exposure to the cold.
- Avoid wearing wet clothing.
- Monitor the wind chill factor.
- Keep activity below the perspiration level.
- Avoid direct contact of bare skin and cold metal.
- Use the buddy system to check for early signs of cold injury.
- Wear several layers of loose-fitting clothing to increase insulation and cold weather headgear to prevent loss of body heat.
- Avoid alcohol intake. Alcohol dilates surface blood vessels, a process that initially causes the body to feel warmer but actually chills it through heat loss.

6-34. Wind chill charts provide time limits for cold exposure before an individual suffers injury. These charts correlate wind velocities and ambient air temperature to provide an equivalent temperature based on the wind chill factor. The same data apply when wet boots or wet clothing is worn or flesh is exposed. These charts also indicate the level below which frostbite becomes a real hazard. Immersion (trench) foot can occur at any temperature shown on these charts, given the right combination of wind velocity and ambient air temperature. Figure 6-1 provides an example of a wind chill chart.
Chapter 7
Noise and Vibration in Army Aviation

Noise levels in both RW and FW aircraft exceed safe noise exposure limits. In addition, crewmembers are subjected to aircraft vibrations that can produce fatigue, degrade comfort, interfere with performance, and can influence operational safety and occupational health. Both noise and vibration effects can occur simultaneously with initial exposure or manifest only after the passage of time and repeated exposure. This chapter addresses the physiology of noise and vibration and offers strategies to minimize short- and long-term exposure.

CHARACTERISTICS AND EFFECTS

7-1. Noise is loud, unpleasant, or unwanted sound. Vibration is a periodic motion (for example oscillation) of a body or a substance from a position of equilibrium. In aviation, noise and vibration can cause annoyance, speech interference, fatigue, and hearing loss.

ANNOYANCE

7-2. Noise is undesirable when it warrants unnecessary attention or interferes with routine activities. High-frequency noise and vibration are especially distracting and can cause a subjective sense of fatigue.

SPEECH INTERFERENCE

7-3. When noise and vibration reach a certain loudness or amplitude, they mask normal communication and words become difficult to understand.

HEARING LOSS

7-4. Permanent hearing damage is a common and significant undesirable effect of noise exposure. The effects of excessive vibration include internal organ malfunctions and skeletal disabilities. Damage can be rapid when noise is extremely intense or prolonged, but it is often subtle in onset and results from continual exposure at lesser intensities. All aviation personnel must understand this damage can be cumulative and may lead to permanent hearing loss.

SOUND AND VIBRATIONAL MEASUREMENT

7-5. Sound and vibration energy have measurable characteristics, including frequency, intensity/amplitude, and duration.

FREQUENCY

7-6. Frequency is the physical characteristic that gives sound pitch. Frequency of periodic motion is the number of times per second air pressure oscillates. The number of oscillations, or cycles per second, is measured in hertz (Hz).

Human Hearing and Speech Range

7-7. The human ear is very sensitive and can detect frequencies from 20 to 20,000 Hz. Speech involves frequencies from 200 to 6,800 Hz, the range in which the ear is most sensitive.
Speech Intelligibility

7-8. People must be able to hear in the range of 300 to 3,000 Hz to understand speech communication. Speech outside these ranges can result in incoherence or misinterpretation.

Vibration

7-9. Low frequency vibrations have the most significant effects on the body with frequencies below 100 Hz displacing body parts. These effects vary greatly with direction, body support, and restraint.

Intensity/Amplitude

7-10. Intensity is a measure that correlates sound pressure to loudness. Amplitude (for vibration) is the maximum displacement about a position of rest.

7-11. Aviation personnel must understand the relationship of decibels to sound pressure (vibration). For every 20-decibel increase in loudness, sound pressure increases by a factor of 10. At 80 decibels, sound pressure is 10 thousand times greater than at 0 decibels; at 100 decibels, sound pressure is 1 million times greater than at 0 decibels. The sound pressure that travels through air to stimulate hearing also can cause hearing loss under certain conditions. Table 7-1 shows the effects of various sound intensities on listeners.

Table 7-1. Effects of various sound intensities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency (decibels)</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Hearing threshold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Average human conversation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Damage-risk limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Discomfort threshold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Pain threshold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>Eardrum rupture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Duration

7-12. Duration is the length of time an individual is exposed to noise or vibration. It is a variable factor that can be measured in seconds, minutes, hours, days, or any other selected unit of time.

Natural Body Resonance

7-13. Natural body resonance is the mechanical amplification of vibration by the body at specific frequencies. Table 7-2 shows resonant frequencies for various parts of the human body.

Table 7-2. Resonant frequencies and the human body

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body Part</th>
<th>Resonant Frequency (Hz)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Whole body</td>
<td>4–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder girdle</td>
<td>4–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyes</td>
<td>30–90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Damping

7-14. Damping is the loss of mechanical energy in a vibrating system. This loss causes vibration to slow.
NOISE AND HEARING LEVELS

7-15. Army Aviation personnel are exposed to two types of sound levels that can impair hearing: steady-state noise and impulse noise.

STEADY-STATE NOISE

7-16. Aviation personnel encounter steady-state noise around operating aircraft. This noise is usually at a high intensity over a wide range of frequencies. The United States Surgeon General has established 85 decibels at all frequencies as the maximum permissible sound level for continuous exposure to steady-state noise (damage-risk criteria). There is a direct link between exposure duration and intensity; the louder the sound, the shorter the time required to cause hearing loss. Table 7-3 shows recommended allowable noise exposure levels for various exposure durations. Exposure to noise above recommended duration levels could result in noise-induced hearing loss that can pose a significant health risk to Army aviation personnel.

Table 7-3. Recommended allowable noise exposure levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure Duration Per Day (hour)</th>
<th>Maximum Exposure Level (decibel)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: For every 5-decibel noise intensity increase, the exposure time limit is cut in half.

IMPULSE NOISE

7-17. Weapons fire produces impulse noise, which is an explosive, high intensity sound that peaks quickly then falls rapidly. Although the entire cycle usually lasts only milliseconds, impulse noise is detrimental to hearing when intensity exceeds 140 decibels.

7-18. In both RW and FW aircraft, overall noise levels generally equal 100 or more decibels and therefore exceed the 85-decibel damage-risk criteria. Table 7-4 shows estimated noise levels for RW and FW Army aircraft.

Table 7-4. Rotary- and fixed-wing aircraft noise levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aircraft</th>
<th>Noise Level (decibels)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CH-47D</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UH-60A</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AH-64</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH-67*</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-12/RC-12</td>
<td>106**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC-35</td>
<td>96***</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Based on a Bell 206 helicopter  ** Exterior noise level  *** Cabin noise level

7-19. The frequency that generates the most intense noise level is 300 Hz. Low-frequency noise can produce high-frequency hearing loss. Providing adequate hearing protection for lower frequencies is very difficult. Exposure to these levels without hearing protection ultimately will result in permanent hearing loss.
VIBRATIONAL EFFECTS

7-20. The human body reacts in various ways to vibration:
- Vibration can cause short-term acute effects due to the body’s biomechanical properties.
- The human body acts like a series of objects connected by springs.
- The connective tissue that binds the major organs together reacts to vibration in a similar fashion to springs.
- When the body is subjected to certain frequencies, tissue and organs begin to resonate (increase in amplitude).
- Objects create momentum when they reach their resonant frequency, which then increases in intensity with each oscillation.
- Without shock absorption, vibration may damage an object or bodily organ.

7-21. Helicopters subject crewmembers to vibrations over a frequency range that coincides with the body’s resonant frequencies. Prolonged exposure to vibration causes both short- and long-term effects on the body. For example, vibration can affect the respiratory system, by increasing breathing rate and O₂ consumption with short exposures to high frequencies causing labored breathing. Common effects of vibration are the following:
- Motion sickness.
- Disorientation.
- Pain.
- Microcirculatory effects.
- Visual problems.

HEARING LOSS

7-22. Factors such as age, health, and the noise environment contribute to hearing loss. There are three types of hearing loss: conductive, presbycusis, and sensorineural.

CONDUCTIVE

7-23. Conductive hearing loss occurs when some defect or impediment blocks sound transmission from the external ear to the inner ear. Wax buildup, middle-ear fluid, or calcification of the bones of hearing in the middle ear can impede the mechanical transmission of sound. Conductive hearing loss primarily affects low frequencies and, in most cases, can be treated medically. A hearing aid is often beneficial because the inner ear can still detect sounds if they are loud enough. An aviator can fly with a hearing aid if he or she is given a waiver to continue on flight status.

PRESBYCUSIS

7-24. Presbycusis is the cumulative effects of aging on hearing loss. It is a progressive and irreversible hearing loss resulting from degeneration of the organs of the inner ear or auditory nerves. This hearing loss is most marked at higher frequencies.

SENSORINEURAL

7-25. Sensorineural hearing loss occurs when the cochlea’s hair cells are damaged within the inner ear. This type of hearing loss is caused primarily by noise exposure, but disease or aging can contribute as well. Sensorineural hearing loss caused by noise exposure generally occurs first in the higher frequencies. There is no known cure for this nonreversible type of hearing loss, and hearing aids are the most common treatment.

MIXED

7-26. A crewmember might have an ear infection that could cause conductive hearing loss but be diagnosed with sensorineural hearing loss. The ear infection is potentially treatable; sensorineural hearing loss is not.
HEARING PROTECTION

7-27. Hearing loss from noise and vibrations can be prevented. Pilots, crewmembers, ground support troops, and passengers should wear hearing protection at all times.

EFFECTIVENESS OF PROTECTIVE DEVICES

7-28. The amount of sound protection offered by a protective device is determined first by its design, fit, and condition, but most importantly by the willingness and ability of the individual to use it properly. Using individual devices in combination provides the best hearing protection.

7-29. While individual devices are not foolproof, virtually all noise-induced hearing loss is preventable if the devices fit properly and are worn on all flights. Even if hearing is already partially affected, protective devices will help prevent further damage.

TYPES OF PROTECTIVE DEVICES

7-30. Aircraft noise levels interfere with speech communication between crewmembers and pose the risk of hearing loss. Protective measures that can reduce the undesirable effects of noise include—

- Use of personal protective measures.
- Isolation or distance from the noise source.

Helmets

7-31. The HGU-56P aviator helmet (figure 7-1) provides excellent protection in terms of noise and crash attenuation. This helmet provides exceptional noise attenuation from 3,000 to 8,800 Hz.

![Figure 7-1. HGU-56P aviator helmet](image)

7-32. The HGU-56P helmet reduces noise exposure to safe limits for every aircraft in the Army inventory except the UH-60 Black Hawk and CH-47 Chinook. Table 7-5, page 7-6, shows the estimated effective exposure (actual sound level experienced by aviator) when wearing various hearing protectors.

Note. Operations in UH-60 and CH-47 aircraft require both helmet and earplug use to attenuate noise and prevent hearing loss.
### Table 7-5. Estimated effective exposure level by helmet and platform

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aircraft</th>
<th>Hearing Protector</th>
<th>Effective Exposure Level (decibels)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UH-60A</td>
<td>HGU-56P</td>
<td>90.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH-47D</td>
<td>HGU-56P</td>
<td>86.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AH-64</td>
<td>IHADSS (Reg and XL)</td>
<td>80.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-12</td>
<td>H-157 headset</td>
<td>70.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7-33. Ancillary devices worn with the aviator’s helmet can significantly compromise hearing protection. For example, eyeglass frames break the ear seal and create a leak that produces a sound path from outside to inside the ear cup.

### Earplugs

7-34. Crewmembers and ground support personnel may select earplugs, from a variety of different styles, that best suits mission requirements. These types include communications earplugs and insert-type earplugs.

#### Communications Earplug

7-35. The communications earplug (CEP) (figure 7-2) improves hearing protection and speech communication reception. The CEP includes a miniature transducer that reproduces speech signals from the aircraft’s internal communication system (ICS). The foam tip acts as a hearing protector similar to the foam earplugs worn by pilots for double hearing protection. A miniature wire from the CEP connects to the ICS through a mating connector mounted on the rear of the helmet. The CEP has an airworthiness release for all Army aircraft using the HGU-56P helmet and M24 mask. Custom-Fit eartips are available for both the CEP standard and CEP mini. Custom ear-tips have the advantage of being made from a mold of your ear producing a custom, individual fit.

![Figure 7-2. Communications earplug](image)

#### Insert-Type Earplugs

7-36. Insert-type earplugs are a common form of hearing protection. All earplugs tend to loosen with talking or vibration and must be reseated periodically to prevent inadvertent noise exposure. Users’ voices sound lower and muffled with properly fitted earplugs, and initial use can diminish the user’s ability to hear cockpit communications. Noise protection with earplugs is 18 to 45 decibels across all frequency bands. Three types of earplugs are—

- The foam earplug, which provides excellent noise attenuation, comfort, and ease in maintaining a seal. To ensure maximum attenuation, these plugs should be inserted properly and kept clean.
- The V-51R single-flange earplug, which is available in five different sizes and provides a suitable fit for more than 95 percent of all Army aviation personnel (10 percent of crewmembers need a different size for each ear). These plugs can be cleaned with soap and water.
The triple-flange earplug, which provides nearly the same attenuation as the V-51R and is available in three sizes (small, medium, and large). These plugs are comfortable for most individuals and can be cleaned with soap and water.

Combined Hearing Protection

7-37. In combination with the HGU-56P and IHADSS helmets, earplugs provide additional protection from noise generated by all aircraft in the United States Army inventory. Table 7-6 shows estimated effective exposure levels at the pilot’s station for crewmembers wearing the HGU-56P helmet with the three earplug types described above.

Table 7-6. Estimated effective exposure levels for the HGU-56P with earplugs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Earplug</th>
<th>UH-60A (120 knots)</th>
<th>CH-47D (100 knots)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Triple-flange plug</td>
<td>70.6</td>
<td>75.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single-flange plug</td>
<td>73.3</td>
<td>76.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-A-R® foam plug</td>
<td>68.4</td>
<td>75.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Earmuffs

7-38. Several types of earmuffs (figure 7-3) provide adequate sound protection for aviation ground support personnel. When adjusted properly and in good condition, most earmuffs attenuate sound as well as properly fitted earplugs. However, earmuffs tend to provide slightly more high-frequency protection and slightly less low-frequency protection than earplugs.

![Figure 7-3. Earmuffs](image)

VIBRATION PREVENTIVE MEASURES

7-39. Vibration cannot be eliminated, but its effects on human performance and physiological function can be reduced. Preventive measures include—

- Maintaining good posture during flight.
- Restraint systems provide protection against high-magnitude vibration experienced in extreme turbulence.

CAUTION

Body supports such as lumbar inserts and added seat cushions can reduce discomfort and dampen vibration. However, they might increase the likelihood of injury during a crash sequence due to their compression characteristics. Do not modify aircraft seats for the sake of comfort.

- Maintaining equipment. Proper aircraft maintenance such as blade tracking can reduce unnecessary vibration exposure.
• Isolating crewmembers and passengers. Patients placed on the floor of medical evacuation aircraft experience more vibration than those situated in upper racks.

• Limiting exposure time. Short flights with frequent breaks are preferred over one long flight, mission permitting.

• Letting the aircraft do the work. Crewmembers should not grip controls tightly. Vibration can be transmitted through control linkages during turbulence.

• Maintaining good physical condition. Fat multiplies vibration, but muscle dampens it by reducing the magnitude of oscillations encountered in flight. Good physical condition also lessens the effects of fatigue and allows Soldiers to function during extended combat operations with minimum rest.

• Maintaining sufficient hydration. Drink adequate amounts of fluids (preferably water) so that urine color is a clear, light yellow and not dark. Avoid beverages, such as energy drinks, with excessive amounts of caffeine. Coupled with vibration, dehydration can cause fatigue twice as fast and requires double the time needed for recovery.
Chapter 8
Vision

Crewmembers rely more on their vision than any other sense to orient themselves in flight. While vision is the most accurate and reliable sense, visual cues can be misleading and contribute to incidents within the flight environment. Aviation personnel must be aware of and know how to effectively compensate for physical deficiencies and self-imposed stressors as well as visual cue limitations. This chapter discusses visual limitations and compensatory techniques.

SECTION I – ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE EYE

8-1. Understanding how the eye functions is key to crewmembers mastering techniques they can employ to overcome visual limitations. It is usually not a lack of visual acuity that causes problems for crewmembers; rather, it is a lack of understanding of how the eye actually works.

8-2. Understanding basic anatomy and physiology of the eye enables crewmembers to use their eyes more effectively during flight. Light enters the eye and passes through the cornea, a circular, transparent protective tissue that projects forward, protects the eye, and has a role in focusing light. From there it enters the pupil, which is the opening (black portion) in the center of the iris. The pupil allows light to enter the eye and stimulate the retina. The iris is the round, pigmented (colored) membrane surrounding the pupil and adjusts pupil size by using ciliary muscles attached to the pupil. The iris adjusts the size of the pupil’s exposed portion to regulate the amount of light entering the eye. When the pupil dilates (enlarges) under low light levels, it allows more light to enter the eye to further stimulate the retina. When the pupil constricts (becomes smaller) under high light levels, it decreases the amount of light entering the eye to avoid oversaturation (stimulation) of the retina. Light entering the eye is regulated so the retina is neither under saturated nor oversaturated with light images, both of which have negative effects on visual acuity.

8-3. After light travels through the pupil it strikes the lens, a transparent, biconvex membrane located behind the pupil. The lens then directs (refracts) the light to the retina, the posterior or rear portion of the eye. The retina is a complex, structured membrane consisting of multiple layers. The retina contains many tiny photoreceptor cells known as rods and cones. When light stimulates the retina, it produces a chemical change within the photoreceptor cells that stimulates and transmits nerve impulses to the brain via the optic nerve. The brain deciphers these impulses and creates a mental image that interprets what the individual is viewing. Figure 8-1 (page 8-2) illustrates the basic anatomy of the human eye.
VISUAL ACUITY

8-4. Visual acuity measures the eye’s ability to resolve spatial detail. The Snellen test is commonly used to measure an individual’s visual acuity. Normal visual acuity is documented as 20/20. This means that at a distance of 20 feet an individual can clearly read 9 letters that are normalized in size, shape and font. To further clarify, an individual with 20/40 visual acuity reads at 20 feet what an individual with normal visual acuity (20/20) reads at 40 feet.

8-5. The human eye functions like a camera. It has a simultaneous field of view (figure 8-2), which is oval and typically measures 130 degrees vertically by 160 degrees horizontally. When two eyes are used for viewing, overall field of vision measures about 120 degrees vertically by 200 degrees horizontally.

RETINAL PHOTORECEPTOR CELLS

8-6. Retinal photoreceptor cells are known as rods and cones. This section describes the roles of rods and cones in vision and how varying levels of light affect vision.

RODS AND CONES

8-7. Retinal rod and cone cells are named for their shape. Cone cells are used primarily for day or high-intensity light vision (viewing periods or conditions). The rods are used for night or low-intensity light vision (viewing periods or conditions). Some characteristics of day and night vision are due to the distribution pattern of rods and cones on the retina. The center of the retina, the fovea, contains a very high concentration of cone cells but no rod cells. The concentration of rod cells begins to increase toward the retina’s periphery.
Cone Neurology

8-8. The retina contains seven million cone cells. Each cone cell in the fovea is connected to a single nerve fiber that leads directly to the brain. Each cell generates a nerve impulse under sufficient light levels during daylight or high-intensity light exposure. Cone cells provide sharp visual acuity and color perception. Under low light or dark conditions, cone function degrades; but crewmembers will perceive other colors if light intensity is heightened by artificial sources such as—

- Aircraft position lights.
- Anticollision lights.
- Runway lights.
- Beacon lights.
- Artificial light in metropolitan areas.

Rod Neurology

8-9. There are 120 million rod cells in the retina. There is a 10-to-1 to 10,000-to-1 ratio of rod cells to neuron cells within the retina. Due to the large number of rod cells connected to each nerve fiber outside the fovea, dim light can trigger a nerve impulse to the brain. The periphery of the retina, where the rods are concentrated, is much more sensitive to light than the fovea. This concentration is responsible for night vision, which provides silhouette recognition of objects. It is also why crewmembers’ eyes are highly sensitive to light during low ambient light or dark conditions.

Iodopsin and Rhodopsin

8-10. Vision is possible due to chemical reactions within the eye. The chemical iodopsin is always present within cone cells. Iodopsin allows cone cells to immediately respond to visual stimulation regardless the ambient light level. Rod cells, however, contain an extremely light-sensitive chemical called rhodopsin, more commonly referred to as visual purple. Rhodopsin is not always present in the rods because light bleaches it out and renders the rods inactive to stimulation. Rhodopsin is so sensitive that bright light exposure can bleach out all visual purple within seconds and dark adaptation is reset.

Night Vision

8-11. Night vision requires a buildup of rhodopsin be present in the rods. The average time required to gain the greatest sensitivity or adaptation to a dark environment is 30 to 45 minutes. When fully adapted, the rod cells become up to 10,000 times more sensitive than at the start of the dark adaptation period. Total light sensitivity can increase 100,000 times through a dilated pupil.

Day Blind Spot

8-12. Since humans have two eyes, they view all images with binocular vision. Each eye compensates for the day blind spot in the optic disk of the opposite eye. The day blind spot covers an area of 5.5 to 7.5 degrees and is located about 15 degrees from the fovea, originating where the optic nerve attaches to the retina. The size of the day blind spot is due to the optic nerve’s oval shape combined with its offset position where it attaches to the retina. No cones or rods are present at the attachment point. The day blind spot causes difficulty when individuals do not move their head or eyes but continue to look straight forward while an object is brought into the visual field. Figure 8-3, page 8-4, demonstrates the day blind spot.
SECTION II – TYPES OF VISION

8-13. The three types of light adaptation and viewing periods associated with Army aviation are photopic, mesopic, and scotopic. Each type requires different sensory stimuli or ambient light conditions.

PHOTOPIC VISION

8-14. Photopic vision (figure 8-4) is experienced during daylight or under high levels of artificial illumination. Cones concentrated in the fovea centralis are primarily responsible for vision in bright light. Due to the high-level light condition, rod cells are bleached out and become less effective. Sharp image interpretation and color vision are characteristics of photopic vision. The fovea centralis is automatically directed toward an object by a visual fixation reflex. Therefore, under photopic conditions, the eye uses central vision for interpretation, especially in determining details.

MESOPIC VISION

8-15. Mesopic vision (figure 8-5) is experienced at dawn, dusk, and under full moonlight. Vision is achieved by a combination of rods and cones. Visual acuity steadily decreases with declining light. Color vision is reduced or degraded as light levels decrease and the cones become less effective. Mesopic vision is the most dangerous vision type for crewmembers. How degraded the ambient light condition is determines what type of scanning or viewing technique crewmembers should use to detect objects and maintain safe and incident-free flight. For example, the gradual loss of cone sensitivity might necessitate off-center viewing to detect objects in and around the flight path. Incidents might occur if crewmembers
fail to recognize the need to change scanning techniques from central or focal viewing to off-center viewing.

Figure 8-5. Mesopic vision

SCOTOPIC VISION

8-16. Scotopic vision (figure 8-6) is experienced in low light environments such as partial moonlight and starlight conditions. Cones become ineffective in these conditions, causing poor resolution in detail. Visual acuity decreases to 20/200 or less, and color perception is lost. A central or night blindspot occurs when cone cell sensitivity is lost. Scotopic vision degrades primary color perception to shades of black, gray, and white unless the light source is of adequate intensity to stimulate the cones. Peripheral vision is used primarily while viewing with scotopic vision.

Figure 8-6. Scotopic vision

NIGHT BLIND SPOT

8-17. The night blind spot (figure 8-7, page 8-6) should not be confused with the day blind spot. The night blind spot occurs when the fovea becomes inactive in low light conditions and involves an area from 5 to 10 degrees wide in the center of the visual field. An object viewed directly at night might not be seen due to the night blind spot; if the object is detected, it will fade away when stared at longer than 2 seconds. The size of the night blind spot increases as the distance between the eyes and object increases. Therefore, the night blind spot can hide larger objects as the distance between the observer and object increases. Figure 8-8 (page 8-6) illustrates this effect.
8-18. Stimulation of only rod cells (peripheral vision most intact) is primary for viewing during scotopic vision. Crewmembers must use peripheral vision to overcome the effects of scotopic vision. Peripheral vision allows crewmembers to see dimly lit objects and maintain visual reference to moving objects. The natural reflex of looking directly at an object must be reoriented through night vision training. To compensate for scotopic vision, crewmembers must use searching eye movements to locate an object and small eye movements to retain sight of the object. Crewmembers also must use off-center viewing; if the eyes are held stationary when focusing on an object for more than 2 to 3 seconds using scotopic vision, images can fade away or bleach out completely.

**SECTION III – VISUAL DEFICIENCIES**

8-19. Aviation personnel must be able to recognize and understand common visual deficiencies. Important eye problems related to degraded visual acuity and depth perception include myopia, hyperopia, astigmatism, presbyopia, and retinal rivalry. Surgical procedures to sculpt or reshape the cornea may correct vision deficits, but can also produce new visual anomalies in certain cases.
MYOPIA

8-20. Myopia, often referred to as nearsightedness, is caused by an error in refraction where the lens of the eye does not focus an image directly on the retina. When a person with myopia views an image at a distance, the eye’s actual focal point is in front of the retinal plane or wall, causing blurred vision. Thus, distant objects are not seen clearly and only nearby objects are in focus. Figure 8-9 depicts this condition.

Figure 8-9. Myopia (nearsightedness)

NIGHT MYOPIA

8-21. Blue wavelengths of light prevail in the visible portion of the spectrum at night. Therefore, slightly nearsighted or myopic individuals viewing blue-green light at night might experience blurred vision. Even crewmembers with perfect vision will find image sharpness decreases as pupil diameter increases. For individuals with mild refractive errors, these factors combine to make vision unacceptably blurred unless they wear corrective glasses.

8-22. Another issue crewmembers must consider is “dark focus.” When light levels decrease, the eye’s focusing mechanism might move toward a resting position, making the eye more myopic. These factors become important when crewmembers rely on terrain features during unaided night flights. Special corrective lenses can be prescribed to correct night myopia.

HYPEROPIA

8-23. Hyperopia, often referred to as farsightedness, also is caused by a refraction error; the eye’s lens does not focus images directly on the retina. When a crewmember views a near image in a hyperopic state, the eye’s actual focal point is behind the retinal plane or wall, causing blurred vision. Nearby objects are not seen clearly; only more distant objects are in focus. Figure 8-10 depicts this condition.

Figure 8-10. Hyperopia (farsightedness)
ASTIGMATISM

8-24. Astigmatism is the inability to focus different meridians simultaneously. It results from an unequal curvature of the cornea or eye lens that causes a ray of light to spread over a diffused area on the retina. In normal vision, a ray of light is sharply focused on the retina. If, for example, an astigmatic individual focuses on poles (vertical), the sign (horizontal) will be out of focus, as shown in figure 8-11.

![Figure 8-11. Astigmatism](image)

PRESBYOPIA

8-25. Presbyopia, a condition that causes the lenses to harden, is part of the normal aging process. Beginning in the early teens, the human eye gradually loses the ability to accommodate for and focus on nearby objects. When people are about 40 years old, their eyes are unable to focus at normal reading distances without reading glasses. Reduced illumination interferes with focus depth and accommodation ability.

8-26. Lens hardening can result in clouding of the lenses, a condition known as cataracts. Aviators with early cataracts might see a standard eye chart clearly in normal daylight but have difficulty under bright light conditions due to the light scattering as it enters the eye. This glare sensitivity is disabling under certain circumstances. Glare disability, related to contrast sensitivity, is the inability to detect objects against varying shades of backgrounds. Other visual functions that decline with age and affect crewmember performance include—

- Dynamic acuity.
- Glare recovery.
- Function under low illumination.
- Information processing.

RETINAL RIVALRY

8-27. Retinal rivalry might be experienced when the eyes attempt to simultaneously perceive two dissimilar objects independently. This phenomenon can occur when pilots view objects through the heads up display in the AH-64. Conflict in total perception arises when one eye views one image and the other eye views another image. Quite often, the dominant eye overrides the non-dominant eye, possibly causing
information delivered to the non-dominant eye to be missed. Additionally, this rivalry can lead to ciliary spasms and eye pain. Mental conditioning and practice appear to alleviate this condition; therefore, retinal rivalry becomes less of a problem as crewmembers gain experience.

SURGICAL PROCEDURES

8-28. Surgical procedures are available to correct visual deficiencies. The most common procedures are described below, but this list is not inclusive of all available options. AR 40-501 states that corrective eye surgeries involving laser-assisted in-situ keratomileusis (LASIK), photorefractive keratectomy (PRK), or other forms of corrective eye surgery may disqualify Army crewmembers from flight duty under certain conditions. While corrective eye surgery is a waiverable condition, crewmembers must consult their flight surgeon before undergoing these procedures.

PHOTOREFRACTIVE KERATECTOMY

8-29. PRK is a procedure that corrects corneal refractive errors through a series of fine laser ablations that resculpt the cornea. This procedure flattens the cornea, which then bends or refracts light properly on the retina and corrects myopic deficiency. Some studies suggest there is increased risk of haze at the treated interface with increased ultraviolet exposure due to the destruction of the corneal membrane, even years after surgery.

LASER EPITHELIAL KERATOMILEUSIS

8-30. Laser epithelial keratomileusis is similar to PRK in its depth of corneal involvement but utilizes a flap technique similar to LASIK. An epithelial flap is made and removed mechanically, followed by laser sculpting of the corneal stroma. One benefit to this procedure is that postsurgical flap displacement, while more likely to occur due to the thinness of the flap, is less likely to cause permanent vision change as compared to the thicker and deeper LASIK flap.

LASER-ASSISTED IN-SITU KERATOMILEUSIS

8-31. LASIK is the procedure surgeons use to carve and reshape the cornea. A laser is used to shave the anterior half of the cornea, creating a flap that is then retracted. The inner side of the cornea is then reshaped with the laser, causing the cornea to flatten. The flap is replaced in its original position when reshaping is complete. After surgery, the flatter cornea properly bends and refracts light on the retina. Unlike PRK, this technique can correct for severe myopia and hyperopia. LASIK’s primary adverse effect is astigmatism caused by irregularities in the corneal surface. In addition, permanent damage to the cornea and severely degraded visual acuity will result if the flap becomes suddenly detached in an accident.

SECTION IV – FACTORS AFFECTING OBJECT VISIBILITY

8-32. The ease with which an object can be seen depends on various factors. Each factor can either increase or decrease the object’s visibility. Object visibility increases as—

- Object angular size increases and distance between the object and viewer decreases.
- Ambient light illumination (overall brightness) increases.
- Degree of retinal adaptation increases.
- Color and contrast between the object and background increase.
- Object position within the visual field (visibility threshold) increases.
- Eye focus and viewing time increase.
- Atmospheric clarity increases; neutral-density (ND)-15 sunglasses can aid visibility in excessive light or bright conditions.

8-33. Interference in the perception of instantaneous visual pictures occurs as aircraft speed increases. In some cases, it might take 1 to 2 seconds or longer to recognize and consciously assess a complex situation. By the time an object is eventually perceived, it might already have been overtaken. The time it takes to perceive an object is significant for crewmembers. Perception time includes the time it takes—
8-34. Crewmembers should achieve maximum dark adaptation in the least time possible. Crewmembers also must protect themselves against the loss of night vision. There are several methods for accomplishing these requirements.

*DARK ADAPTATION*

8-35. Dark adaptation is the process by which the eyes become more sensitive to low levels of illumination. Rhodopsin (visual purple) is the substance in the rods responsible for light sensitivity. The degree of dark adaptation increases as the amount of visual purple in the rods increases through biochemical reaction. Each person adapts to darkness in varying degrees and at different rates. For example, a person in a darkened movie theater adapts more quickly to the prevailing illumination level. However, compared to a moonless night, the light level within a movie theater is high. Additionally, a person in a darkened theater requires less time to adapt to complete darkness than an individual in a lighted hangar. The lower the starting illumination level, the less time required for adaptation.

8-36. Dark adaptation for optimal night vision acuity approaches its maximum level in about 30 to 45 minutes under minimal lighting conditions. If the eyes are exposed to bright light after dark adaptation, their sensitivity is temporarily impaired. The degree of impairment depends on the intensity and duration of the exposure. Brief flashes from high-intensity, white xenon strobe lights commonly used as aircraft anti-collision lights have little effect on night vision because the energy pulses are of such short duration, lasting only milliseconds. Exposure of 1 second or longer to a flare or searchlight, however, can seriously impair night vision. Depending on brightness (intensity) and exposure duration or after repeated exposures, complete dark adaptation recovery time can range from several minutes to 45 minutes or longer.

8-37. Exposure to bright sunlight also has a cumulative and adverse effect on dark adaptation. Reflective surfaces such as sand, snow, water, and manmade structures intensify this condition. Exposure to intense sunlight for 2 to 5 hours decreases visual sensitivity for up to 5 hours and also decreases the rate of dark adaptation and degree of night visual acuity. These cumulative effects can persist for several days.

8-38. Retinal rods are least affected by the wavelength of a deep red light. Figure 8-12 compares rod and cone cell sensitivities. Since rods are stimulated by low ambient light levels, deep red lights do not significantly impair night vision if proper techniques are used. To minimize the adverse effects of red lights on night vision, crewmembers should adjust light intensity to the lowest usable level and view instruments only briefly.

![Figure 8-12. Rod and cone cell sensitivities](image_url)
8-39. Illness adversely affects dark adaptation. Individuals with high body temperatures consume $O_2$ at a higher-than-normal rate, causing $O_2$ depletion that can induce hypoxia and degrade night vision. In addition, the unpleasant feelings associated with sickness are distracting and can restrict a crewmember’s ability to concentrate on flight duties and responsibilities.

**PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT**

8-40. The use of protective equipment aids in maximizing the rate of dark adaptation and preservation of night vision.

**SUNGLASSES**

8-41. When exposed to bright sunlight for prolonged periods, crewmembers anticipating night flight should wear military-issued, ND-15, or equivalent filter lenses. This precaution minimizes the negative effects of sunlight and solar glare on rhodopsin production, which maximizes the rate of dark adaptation and improves night vision sensitivity and acuity.

**RED-LENS GOGGLES**

8-42. If possible, crewmembers should wear approved red-lens goggles or be exposed to red lighting to achieve complete dark adaptation before executing night-flying operations. These procedures allow crewmembers to begin dark adaptation in an artificially illuminated room before flight. Red-lens goggles and red lighting reduce dark adaptation time and can preserve up to 90 percent of dark adaptation in both eyes. Red lighting and red-lens goggles do not significantly interfere with rhodopsin production and decrease the possibility of undesirable effects from accidental exposure to bright lights, especially as crewmembers transition from the briefing room to the flight line. Exposure to bright lights does, however, lengthen the time crewmembers wearing red-lens goggles need to achieve dark adaptation. Crewmembers wearing red-lens goggles will not achieve complete dark adaptation if the light source is intense enough and exposure is prolonged.

8-43. Crewmembers must not use red lighting or red-lens goggles when viewing inside or outside the aircraft during flight. Red lighting is a longer nanometer, which is very fatiguing to the eyes. In addition, the reds and browns found on nontactical maps not constructed for red light use bleach out when viewed under red lighting.

**SUPPLEMENTAL OXYGEN EQUIPMENT**

8-44. When flying at or above 4,000 feet pressure altitude (PA), crewmembers should use pressure-altitude supplemental $O_2$ if available. Adverse effects on night vision begin at 4,000 feet pressure altitude. Effective night vision depends on the optimal function and sensitivity of the retinal rods. A lack of $O_2$ (hypoxia) significantly reduces rod sensitivity, increases dark adaptation time, and decreases night vision. AR 95-1 describes the requirements for supplemental $O_2$ use related to pressure altitudes.

**PROTECTIVE MEASURES**

8-45. In addition to using protective equipment, crewmembers should take protective measures while in the aircraft to optimize dark adaptation, night vision, and depth perception.

**COCKPIT LIGHT ADJUSTMENT**

8-46. Instrument, cockpit, and rear cargo area overhead lights should be adjusted to the lowest readable level that allows instruments, charts, and maps to be interpreted without prolonged staring or exposure. Although blue-green lighting at low intensities can be used in cockpits without significantly disrupting unaided night vision and dark adaptation, items printed in blue-green might wash out. However, the use of blue-green lighting has several benefits. Blue-green light falls naturally on the retinal wall and allows the eye to focus easily on maps, approach plates, and instruments, thereby decreasing eye fatigue. In addition, the intensity necessary for blue-green lighting is less than that for red lighting, resulting in decreased
infrared signature and less glare. When blue-green lighting is used properly, the decrease in light intensity and ease of focusing make it more effective for night vision.

**EXTERIOR LIGHT ADJUSTMENT**

8-47. If possible, exterior lights should be dimmed or turned off, mission permitting. Aviators should consult command policy for local procedures.

**LIGHT FLASH COMPENSATION**

8-48. The pilot should turn the aircraft away from a light source if a high-intensity flash is expected from a specific direction. When flares illuminate a viewing area or are inadvertently ignited nearby, the pilot should maneuver the aircraft away from the flares to a position along the illuminated area’s periphery. To minimize exposure, the pilot should turn the aircraft so vision is directed away from the light source. When lightning or other unexpected conditions occur, crewmembers can preserve dark adaptation by covering or closing one eye while using the other eye to observe. The covered eye provides the night vision capabilities required for flight after the light source has passed. Time spent expending ordnance should be limited to decrease the effects of flash from aerial weapons systems and keep light levels low. Similarly, crewmembers firing automatic weapons should use short bursts of fire. If direct view of a light source cannot be avoided, crewmembers should cover or close one eye because dark adaptation occurs independently in each eye. Depth perception is severely degraded or lost, however, if both eyes are exposed to a light source since neither remains completely dark adapted.

**NIGHT VISION TECHNIQUES**

8-49. The human eye functions less efficiently at reduced ambient light levels. This reduction limits a crewmember’s visual acuity. Normal color vision decreases and finally disappears as the cones become inactive and the rods begin to function. Tower beacons, runway lights, and other colored lights still can be identified if the light is of sufficient intensity to activate the cones. Normal central daylight vision also decreases due to the night blind spot that develops in low illumination or dark viewing conditions. Therefore, proper techniques for night vision viewing must be used to overcome reduced visual acuity at lower light levels.

**OFF-CENTER VISION**

8-50. There are no limitations to viewing an object with central vision during daylight. If this same technique is used at night, however, the viewer might not see the object due to the night blind spot that exists under low light illumination. To compensate for this limitation, crewmembers must use the off-center vision technique (figure 8-13, page 8-13). This technique requires crewmembers to view an object by looking 10 degrees above, below, or to either side rather than directly at the object. The eyes maintain visual contact with the object via peripheral vision.
8-51. Rapid head or eye movement and fixation decrease the integrating capability of dark-adapted eyes. A steady fixation lasting .5 second to 1 second then shifting vision achieves maximum sensitivity.

8-52. Objects viewed longer than 2 to 3 seconds tend to bleach out and become one solid, invisible tone, resulting in a potentially unsafe operating condition. Crewmembers must be aware of this phenomenon and avoid viewing objects longer than 2 to 3 seconds. By shifting their eyes from one off-center point to another, crewmembers can continue to see objects in their peripheral field of vision.

SCANNING

8-53. During daylight, objects can be perceived at great distances with good detail. At night, however, range is limited and detail is poor. Objects along the flight path can be more readily identified at night when crewmembers use proper techniques to scan the terrain. Effective scanning requires crewmembers to look from right to left or left to right. They should begin scanning at the greatest distance at which an object can be perceived (top) and move inward toward the aircraft’s position (bottom). Figure 8-14 illustrates this scanning pattern.

8-54. The retina’s low light vision elements are unable to perceive images in motion, so crewmembers should use a stop-turn-stop-turn scanning pattern to compensate. For each stop, crewmembers should scan...
an area about 30 degrees wide, to include an area about 250 meters wide at a distance of 500 meters. Each stop’s duration is based on the degree of detail required, but no stop should last more than 2 to 3 seconds. When moving from one viewing point to the next, crewmembers should overlap the previous field of view by 10 degrees. This scanning technique allows greater clarity in observing the periphery. Other scanning techniques, as illustrated in figure 8-15, may be developed to fit the situation.

![Figure 8-15. Stop-turn-stop-turn scanning pattern](image)

**SHAPES OR SILHOUETTES**

8-55. Since visual acuity is reduced at night, objects must be identified by their shapes or silhouettes. Therefore, crewmembers must be familiar with the architectural design of structures in the area covered by the mission. A building silhouette with a high roof and steeple is easily recognized as a church in the United States. However, religious buildings in other parts of the world might have low-pitched roofs with no distinguishing features, including cylinder-shaped structures. For example, minarets attached to mosques or religious temples are similar in shape to barn silos in the United States. Features depicted on maps assist crewmembers in recognizing silhouettes.

**DISTANCE ESTIMATION AND DEPTH PERCEPTION**

8-56. Distance estimation and depth perception cues are easy to recognize when crewmembers use central vision under good illumination. As light levels decrease, however, the ability to accurately judge distance degrades and the eyes become vulnerable to illusions. Crewmembers can better judge distance at night if they understand the mechanisms of distance estimation and depth perception cues. Distance can be estimated using individual cues or a variety of cues. Crewmembers usually use subconscious factors to determine distance. They can more accurately estimate distance if they understand these factors and learn to look for or be aware of other distance cues. Distance estimation and depth perception cues can be binocular or monocular.

**BINOCULAR CUES**

8-57. Binocular cues depend on the slightly different view each eye has of an object. Thus, binocular perception is of value only when the object is close enough to make a perceptible difference in the viewing angle of both eyes. However, since most distances outside the cockpit are so great, binocular cues are of little to no value to crewmembers. Binocular cues also operate on a more subconscious level than monocular cues and are not greatly improved through study and training. Therefore, these cues are not covered further in this publication.

**MONOCULAR CUES**

8-58. Several monocular cues assist crewmembers with distance estimation and depth perception. These cues are geometric perspective, retinal image size, aerial perspective, and motion parallax.
GEOMETRIC PERSPECTIVE

8-59. An object appears to have a different shape when it is viewed at varying distances and from different angles. As illustrated in figure 8-16, the types of geometric perspective include linear perspective (left), apparent foreshortening (center), and vertical position in the field (right).

![Figure 8-16. Geometric perspective](image)

Linear Perspective

8-60. Parallel lines such as railroad tracks tend to converge as distance from the observer increases, as illustrated in the leftmost image of figure 8-16.

Apparent Foreshortening

8-61. The shape of an object or terrain feature appears elliptical (oval and narrow) when viewed from a distance at both higher and lower altitudes. As the distance to the object or terrain feature decreases, the apparent perspective changes to its true shape or form. When flying at lower altitudes and at greater distances, crewmembers might not see objects clearly. If the mission permits, pilots should gain altitude and decrease distance from the viewing area to compensate for this perspective. Once altitude increases and distance between the aircraft and viewing area decreases, the viewing field widens and enlarges so objects become apparent. The center image of figure 8-16 illustrates how the shape of slices of a tree trunk, that are essentially circular when viewed from directly above, appear to change shape when viewed at different distances.

Vertical Position in the Field

8-62. Objects or terrain features at greater distances from the observer appear higher on the horizon than those closer to the observer. In the rightmost image of figure 8-16, the higher vehicle appears closer to the top and at a greater distance from the observer. Before flight, crewmembers should already be familiar with the actual sizes, heights, and altitudes of known objects or terrain features within and around the planned flight route. If the situation and time permit, crewmembers can reference published information to verify actual sizes and heights of objects and terrain features within their flight path. In addition, crewmembers should cross-reference the aircraft altitude indicator to confirm actual aircraft altitude is adequate to safely negotiate the object or terrain feature without prematurely changing aircraft heading, altitude, attitude, or a combination thereof.

RETINAL IMAGE SIZE

8-63. Retinal image size is used in distance estimation. An image focused on the retina is perceived by the brain to be of a given size. The factors that aid in determining distance using the retinal image are known size of objects, increasing and decreasing size of objects, terrestrial association, and overlapping contours or interposition of objects.
Known Size of Objects

8-64. The nearer an object is to the observer, the larger its retinal image. By experience, the brain learns to estimate the distance of familiar objects by the size of their retinal image. Figure 8-17 shows how this method works. A structure projects a specific angle on the retina based on its distance from the observer. If the angle is small, the observer judges the structure to be a great distance away, while a larger angle indicates the structure is close. To use this cue, the observer must know the object’s actual size and have prior visual experience with it. If no experience exists, the observer determines the distance to an object primarily by motion parallax (discussed in paragraph 8-72).

![Figure 8-17. Known size of objects](image)

Increasing or Decreasing Size of Objects

8-65. If the retinal image of an object increases in size, the object is moving closer to the observer. If the retinal image decreases, the object is moving further away. If the retinal image is constant, the object is at a fixed distance.

Terrestrial Association

8-66. Comparison of one object such as an airfield with another object of known size such as a helicopter helps in determining the relative size and apparent distance of the object from the observer. Figure 8-18 shows that objects ordinarily associated together are judged to be at about the same distance. For example, a helicopter observed near an airport is judged to be in the traffic pattern and, therefore, at about the same distance as the airfield.

![Figure 8-18. Terrestrial association](image)
Overlapping Contours or Interposition of Objects

8-67. When objects overlap, the overlapped object is further away. For example, an object partially concealed by another object is behind the object concealing it. Crewmembers must be especially conscious of this cue when making an approach for landing at night. Lights disappearing or flickering in the landing area should be treated as barriers and the flight path adjusted accordingly. Figure 8-19 illustrates overlapping contour.

![Figure 8-19. Overlapping contour](image)

AERIAL PERSPECTIVE

8-68. An object’s clarity and its shadow are perceived by the brain and cues for estimating distance. Crewmembers must use the factors discussed below to determine distance with aerial perspective.

Fading of Colors or Shades

8-69. An object viewed through haze, fog, or smoke appears less distinct and at a greater distance than it actually is. Conversely, if atmospheric transmission of light is unrestricted, the object appears more distinct and closer than it actually is. For example, the cargo helicopter in figure 8-20, page 8-20, is larger than the observation helicopter but, due to the difference in viewing distance and size, they both project the same angle on the observer’s retina. Assuming the observer has no previous experience with either aircraft’s appearance, this cue causes both helicopters to appear the same size. However, if the observer knows the cargo helicopter is the larger aircraft but sees it less distinctly because of visibility restrictions, he or she will judge it to be further away and larger than the observation helicopter. For example, crewmembers might not be able to distinguish green and red anti-collision lights nor the actual interval between aircraft when an additional aircraft is operating at a distance. Both lights can appear white and even blend in with the surrounding foreground.
Loss of Detail or Texture

8-70. The further an observer is from an object, the less apparent discrete details become. For example, at a distance a cornfield appears to be a solid color, tree leaves and branches appear to be a solid mass, and objects appear to be at a great distance. When an aircraft is operating on the ground, crewmembers can see the grass or gravel immediately below, in front of, and alongside the aircraft. If they maintain that view as the aircraft slowly ascends, the crewmembers will notice the clarity and detail of the surface fades and eventually blends in with the terrain as a whole, making identification of individual blades or stones impossible. Environmental factors increase the effects of degraded texture and detail throughout the visual field, an issue that severely decreases depth perception. This issue is a contributing factor to crewmember misjudgments of what they do or do not see and the occurrence of incidents related to those misjudgments.

Position of Light Source and Direction of Shadow

8-71. Every object casts a shadow in the presence of a light source. The direction in which the shadow is cast depends on the position of the light source. If an object’s shadow is cast toward an observer, the object is closer to the observer than the light source. Figure 8-21 illustrates how light and shadow help determine distance.
**Motion Parallax**

8-72. Motion parallax is often considered the most important depth perception cue. Motion parallax refers to the apparent relative motion of stationary objects as viewed by an observer moving across the landscape. Near objects appear to move past or opposite the path of motion; far objects appear to move in the direction of motion or remain fixed. The rate of apparent movement depends on the distance the observer is from the object. Objects near an aircraft appear to move rapidly, while distant objects appear to be almost stationary. Thus, objects that appear to be moving rapidly are judged to be nearby while those moving slowly are judged to be at a greater distance. Motion parallax can be apparent during flight. One example is an aircraft flying at 5,000 feet above ground level. At this altitude distant terrain appears stationary, while the terrain immediately below and to either side of the aircraft appears to be moving slowly (depending on forward airspeed). The opposite is true when an aircraft descends to 80 feet above highest obstacle with a forward airspeed of 120 knots. Terrain and objects in the horizon appear to move at a faster rate, while the terrain and objects underneath and to either side of the aircraft appear to pass at a high rate of speed.

**Visual Illusions**

8-73. The probability of spatial disorientation increases as visual information decreases. Reduced visual references create several illusions that can cause spatial disorientation. Chapter 9 discusses these illusions in more detail.

**Meteorological Conditions and Night Vision**

8-74. Although a mission might begin with clear skies and unrestricted visibility, meteorological conditions can deteriorate rapidly during flight. Clouds can appear gradually and, due to reduced visibility at night, easily go undetected by crewmembers. Aircraft can enter clouds inadvertently and without warning. Fog and haze can be encountered at low altitudes. Visibility can deteriorate gradually or suddenly. It is difficult to detect adverse weather at night, and crewmembers must constantly be aware of changing weather conditions. The following paragraphs discuss adverse weather indicators crews might encounter at night.

8-75. Ambient light levels gradually decrease as cloud coverage increases, causing a loss of visual acuity and terrain contrast even to the point of complete obscurity. If this condition occurs, pilots must initiate inadvertent instrument meteorological condition (IMC) procedures. Crewmembers also must follow local standing operating procedures and command directives. Inadvertent IMC at night is one of the leading causes of Class A aviation mishaps.

8-76. Clouds are present if the moon and stars are not visible. The less visible the moon and stars, the heavier the cloud coverage.

8-77. Clouds obscuring moon illumination create shadows. Crewmembers can detect these shadows by observing the varying levels of ambient light along the flight route.

8-78. The halo effect observed around ground lights indicates the presence of moisture and possible ground fog. As fog and moisture increase, the intensity of these lights decrease. This same effect is apparent during flight. As moisture increases, light emitted from the aircraft is reflected back on the aircraft. This reflection makes it possible for crewmembers to misjudge critical factors such as the layout and height of terrain features and manmade structures, as well as actual position, heading, and altitude of other aircraft.

8-79. The presence of fog over water indicates the temperature and dew point are equal and that fog might soon form over ground areas.

**SECTION VI – Self-Imposed Stress and Vision**

8-80. Crewmembers experience stressors such as altitude during flight. These stressors might not be controllable and can affect mission performance. Crewmembers also must cope with self-imposed stress
but, unlike aviation stress, this type can be controlled. Factors leading to self-imposed stress include drugs, exhaustion, alcohol, tobacco, and hypoglycemia/nutritional deficiency (see AR 40-8).

**DRUGS**

8-81. Adverse side effects associated with drug use are illness and decreases in motor skill function, cognition, reaction time, and other deficits. Crewmembers who become ill should consult their flight surgeon and avoid self-medicating, which is unauthorized for flight personnel. AR 40-8 contains restrictions on drug use while on flight status.

**EXHAUSTION (FATIGUE)**

8-82. A combination of multiple factors causes fatigue; it rarely stems from one factor alone. Contributing factors include poor diet habits and dehydration; poor sleep patterns and lack of rest; poor physical condition and inadequate exercise; various environmental factors; and combat stress. Common side effects of fatigue include altered levels of concentration, awareness, and attentiveness; increased drowsiness (nodding off or falling asleep); and ineffective night-vision viewing techniques (staring rather than scanning).

8-83. Fatigue reduces mental alertness and causes crewmembers to respond more slowly to situations that require immediate reaction. Exhausted crewmembers tend to concentrate on one aspect of a situation rather than consider the total environment. Degradation in performance can be associated with either an overt awareness of exhaustion but is more commonly insidious and dangerous. Exhausted crewmembers are observed to display a breakdown in crew resource management (CRM). They are also prone to staring instead of practicing proper scanning techniques, a mistake that can cause incidents.

8-84. Good physical conditioning should decrease fatigue and improve night scanning efficiency. However, excessive exercise in a given day can lead to increased fatigue. Night flight is more stressful than day flight, and crewmembers must follow prescribed crew rest policies.

**ALCOHOL**

8-85. Alcohol impairs a person’s judgment and causes him or her to become uncoordinated. It also hinders a crewmember’s ability to view properly. Crewmembers under the influence of alcohol are more likely to stare at objects and neglect proper scanning techniques, particularly at night. The effects of alcohol are long lasting, as evidenced by the body’s physiological response to a hangover.

8-86. Alcohol causes histotoxic hypoxia, a poisoning of the bloodstream that interferes with O₂ use by body tissues. At sea level, every ounce of alcohol in the bloodstream increases the body’s physiological altitude. For example, 1 ounce of alcohol in an individual’s bloodstream at sea level has an equivalent physiological altitude of 2,000 feet. An individual who consumes 3 ounces of alcohol at sea level and is then placed at 4,000 feet has an equivalent physiological altitude of 10,000 feet. Hypoxic hypoxia combines with histotoxic hypoxia at these higher altitudes, and the individual’s time of useful consciousness is severely diminished. If a flight lasts longer than 60 minutes, the individual can become unconscious or even die from a lack of O₂ (see AR 95-1).

8-87. Guidance for performing or resuming crewmember duties after alcohol consumption is 12 hours after the last drink with no residual physiological effects present, often described as “12 hours from bottle to brief.” However, as individuals metabolize alcohol differently, 12 hours may not be sufficient for some individuals to be fully mission capable. Crewmember duties consist of preflight and postflight actions including maintenance and are not limited to actual aircraft operation or flight. Detrimental effects associated with alcohol consumption include poor judgment, decision making, perception, reaction time, coordination, and scanning techniques (staring).

**TOBACCO**

8-88. Of all self-imposed stressors, cigarette smoking impairs visual sensitivity at night the most. Hemoglobin in RBCs has a 200 to 300 times greater affinity for carbon monoxide (CO) than O₂, meaning
it accepts carbon monoxide far more rapidly than O₂. Normally, when an individual exhales, the process of pulmonary perfusion (gas exchange within the lungs) releases CO₂ from the bloodstream. When an individual inhales, O₂ is absorbed into blood through hemoglobin in the red blood cells. These processes maintain normal levels of oxygen and other gases within the bloodstream.

8-89. Smoking increases CO, which in turn reduces blood’s capacity to carry O₂. Hypemic hypoxia, a condition that negatively affects an individual’s peripheral vision and dark adaptation, results from this increase in carbon monoxide. For example, if an individual smokes three cigarettes in rapid succession or 20 to 40 cigarettes within a 24-hour period, blood carbon monoxide content increases by 8 to 10 percent. The resulting physiological effects at sea level are the same as flying at 5,000 feet but, more importantly, the individual loses about 20 percent of his or her night vision capability. Table 8-1 compares night vision reduction rates at varying altitudes for smokers and nonsmokers.

Table 8-1. Night vision reduction rates for smokers and nonsmokers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Altitude (feet)</th>
<th>Nonsmoker (%)</th>
<th>Smoker (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>Sea level</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14,000</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16,000</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HYPOGLYCEMIA AND NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCY

8-90. Aviation personnel must not skip or postpone meals and should avoid supplementing primary meals with simple carbohydrates and fast sugars such as sodas and candy bars. These foods and beverages may produce a sudden surge in blood sugar followed by hypoglycemia (low blood sugar), a condition that results in hunger pangs, distraction, habit pattern breakdown, shortened attention span, and other physiological changes. Supplementing meals with fast sugars sustains an individual for 30 to 45 minutes on average, followed by an increase in the intensity of negative effects. Hypoglycemia is not the only adverse effect of an improper diet; a diet deficient in vitamin A can impair night vision. Vitamin A is essential in the production of rhodopsin (visual purple), found in rod cells. Night vision is severely degraded without rhodopsin. A balanced diet that includes foods such as eggs, butter, cheese, liver, carrots, and most green vegetables provides adequate vitamin A intake and helps maintain visual acuity. Crewmembers must consult a flight surgeon before consuming vitamin A supplements not organic to these foods.

SECTION VII – OTHER VISION CONSIDERATIONS

8-91. Crewmembers should be aware of the potentially damaging effects to vision associated with nerve agents and other flight hazards. Though not encompassing a complete list, the most common flight hazards include solar glare, bird strikes, and lasers.

NERVE AGENTS AND NIGHT VISION

8-92. Night vision is adversely affected by minute amounts of nerve agents. Nerve agents can be chemical weapons, but also includes several forms of insecticides used on fields and crops. When direct contact occurs, the pupils constrict and do not dilate in low ambient light, resulting in a condition known as miosis.

8-93. The exposure time required to cause miosis depends on agent concentration. Miosis can occur gradually as the eyes are exposed to low concentrations over a long period. However, exposure to high concentrations can cause miosis in the few seconds it takes to put on a protective mask. Repeated exposure over a period of days is cumulative.

8-94. Symptoms of miosis range from minimal to severe, depending on dosage to the eye. Severe miosis, which is characterized by a reduced ability to see in low ambient light, persists about 48 hours after onset.
The pupil gradually returns to normal over several days, but full recovery can take up to 20 days. Repeated exposure within the affected time is cumulative.

8-95. The onset of miosis is insidious since it is not always immediately painful. Miotic Soldiers might not recognize their condition even as they carry out tasks requiring vision in low ambient light. After a nerve agent attack (especially with the more persistent types), commanders should assume some night vision loss has occurred among personnel otherwise fit for duty and consider grounding crewmembers until they fully recover. All exposed crewmembers and maintenance personnel must consult their flight surgeon and local medical personnel immediately after exposure.

**FLIGHT HAZARDS**

8-96. Solar glare, bird strikes, nuclear flash, and lasers are possible hazards crewmembers might encounter during low-level flight.

**SOLAR GLARE**

8-97. Glare from direct, reflected, and scattered sunlight causes discomfort and reduces visual acuity. To reduce or eliminate discomfort, all crewmembers should use their helmets’ tinted visor or wear ND-15 sunglasses with the clear visor. Day blindness can occur in areas with extreme solar glare such as snowy terrain, bodies of water, or desert environments.

**BIRD STRIKES**

8-98. Bird strikes can occur anytime, day or night, during low-level flight. Cockpit windshields are designed to withstand impacts but the potential for shattering exists. According to the Federal Aviation Administration, if an aircraft traveling at an airspeed equivalent to a 120-mile per hour ground speed strikes a 2-pound seagull, the force exerted would be equal to 4,800 pounds (some antiaircraft rounds exert less force). Therefore, if the viewing environment permits, crewmembers should wear or lower the clear visor for night flights and tinted visor for day flights. These visors also protect the eyes from glass fragments should the windshield shatter.

**NUCLEAR FLASH**

8-99. A fireball from a nuclear explosion can cause flash blindness and retinal burns. By day, the optical blink reflex should prevent retinal burns from distances where survival is possible. When the pupil is dilated at night, however, retinal burns are possible and indirect flash blindness can deprive crewmembers of all useful vision for periods exceeding 1 minute. No practical protection against nuclear flash has been fielded to army aviation personnel.

**LASERS**

8-100. Mobile military lasers currently work by converting electrical and chemical energy into light. This light can be either continuously emitted or collected over time and suddenly released. A laser is light amplified by a stimulated emission of radiation through one prism or a series of multiple prisms, which increases light frequency and intensity. The beam of light produced is usually less than 1 inch in diameter and might or might not be visible to the naked eye (ultraviolet, infrared, and thermal lasers).

8-101. Laser range finders and target designators (except thermal infrared lasers) operate by accumulating and suddenly releasing light energy in the form of a crystal rod about the size of a cigarette. The laser pulse is controlled by an electrical signal that turns the laser on and off. Laser pulses travel at the speed of light—186,411 miles per second (300,000 kilometers per second). When a laser emits light during a pulse, the power output averages about 3 megawatts (3 million watts) along a narrow beam. About 90 percent of emitted energy is contained in this beam. This characteristic makes lasers useful as range finders and target designators but renders them dangerous to human eyes.

8-102. Lasers can damage eyes from a considerable distance, although a beam’s energy level decreases as its diameter widens with increasing distance. Therefore, distance is the best protection against lasers.
If distance is not possible, protective ballistic and laser protective eyewear goggles or visors might offer limited protection. Ballistic limit protections (BLPs) are specific to laser frequency. Crewmembers must identify the type of laser frequency threats they might encounter to ensure they receive the correct BLP eyewear from the unit aviation life support equipment technician. If a crewmember encounters laser radiation while flying (lased). They should report it to air traffic control and flight operations for possible investigation.

8-103. Smoke, fog, and dust weaken laser light, but even in these conditions lasers present a real danger to crewmembers. A useful rule is if a target can be seen through smoke, laser energy can hit the target and also strike the eyes. In daylight, even visual-light lasers are virtually invisible unless there is smoke, mist, or fog in the air.

8-104. The four major classes of directed-energy laser systems are high-energy lasers, low-energy lasers, radio-frequency lasers, and particle-beam lasers.

**Class 1 (Low Energy)**

8-105. Class 1 laser devices do not emit hazardous laser radiation in any operating or viewing condition. Class 1 lasers include fully enclosed lasers such as infrared aiming lights and many laser marksmanship trainers.

**Class 2 (Low-to-Medium Energy)**

8-106. Class 2 laser devices usually include continuous-wave visible laser devices. Crewmembers must take precautions to prevent staring into the direct beams of these devices. Momentary exposure (greater than 0.25 second) is not considered hazardous; for example, current laser pointers, construction lasers, and alignment lasers.

**Class 3a (Medium Energy)**

8-107. Class 3a lasers generally are not hazardous unless crewmembers view them with magnifying optics from within the beam. Class 3a lasers include visible and invisible frequency lasers such as the miniature eye-safe laser infrared observation set (MELIOS).

**Class 3b (Medium-to-High Energy)**

8-108. Class 3b lasers are potentially hazardous if a direct or reflected beam is viewed by unprotected eyes. Care must be taken to prevent intrabeam (within the beam) viewing and control reflections from surfaces such as mirrors and still water. Class 3b lasers include many rangefinders various pointer, illuminator and aiming lights. Crew members must be aware of laser based systems in use on their aircraft and adjoining units and take appropriate precautions.

**Class 4 (High Energy)**

8-109. Class 4 lasers are pulsed, visible, near-infrared lasers that produce diffuse reflections, fire, and skin and eye hazards, with the eyes being especially vulnerable. These lasers have an average output of 500 milliwatts or greater. Safety precautions generally consist of using door interlocks to protect personnel entering a laser facility from exposure, baffles to terminate primary and secondary beams, and use of protective eyewear and clothing. Crewmembers inadvertently or suddenly exposed to these lasers will receive serious retinal burns within tenths of a second if their eyes are unprotected. During peacetime military operations, these lasers typically are operated only on cleared, approved laser ranges or while personnel are using appropriate eye and skin protection. Actual enemy forces, however, might intentionally expose crewmembers to deplete their fighting capability. Class 4 lasers include industrial welders and target designator lasers.

**BUILT-IN PROTECTIVE MEASURES**

8-110. Filters constructed of glass or plastic can stop laser light. These filters absorb or reflect light of a given color or wavelength. Sunglasses are specially created to filter visual light, but an infrared or ultraviolet
laser will penetrate the lenses and damage the eyes. The Army currently provides protective eyewear such as ballistic-laser protective spectacles that help prevent eye injuries from certain types of lasers.

8-111. Crewmembers can take active and passive protective measures to protect themselves from laser injury. Passive protective measures include—
- Taking cover.
- Getting out of the laser’s path.
- Using available protective gear.
- Keeping all exposed skin covered to prevent burns.

8-112. Active protective measures include—
- Using countermeasures as taught or directed by the unit commander.
- Applying evasive action.
- Scanning the battlefield with one eye or monocular optics.
- Minimizing the use of binoculars in areas where lasers could be in use.

8-113. If actively engaged by lasers, crewmembers should deploy smoke and use hardened optical systems and built-in or clip-on filters such as the ballistic-laser protective spectacles. DA PAM 40-506 and TB MED 524 contains information regarding laser injury prevention and medical management.
Chapter 9
Spatial Disorientation

Spatial disorientation (SD) can be deadly. It remains a contributing factor in more aircraft accidents than any other physiologic factor in flight. SD-related mishaps often carry a disproportionately higher penalty and severity (loss of life and total destruction of airframe) when compared to non-SD accidents. In one large review including operations in garrison, training and combat, SD accounted for a quarter of all losses and almost half of all fatalities. The pilots on the controls were often very experienced aviators. Unlike other causative factors, the historical trend for SD accidents has remained relatively unchanged over time.

HUMAN VULNERABILITY TO SPATIAL DISORIENTATION

9-1. Our sensory systems evolved under conditions of a horizontal horizon and 1-G gravitational vertical. Within the flight environment, however, humans remain vulnerable to erroneous perception among the multiple degrees of freedom and various forces experienced. In many ways, humans are poorly equipped for this dynamic flight environment from a physiologic perspective and may inappropriately apply well-learned and developed terrestrial perceptual skills in flight. All crewmembers are vulnerable to SD regardless of experience level.

9-2. Correct orientation relies upon effective perception, integration, and interpretation of multiple sensory systems all operating in concert. These include the visual (most significant component in flight as it is in our conscious prominence and the majority of flight information is acquired visually), vestibular (inner ear organs of equilibrium that provide instantaneous but subconscious signals of angular and linear acceleration), auditory, and somatosensory (receptors in the skin, muscles, tendons, and joints). Discordance, disparities or errors among this ‘system of systems,’ particularly in degraded visual environments, may produce orientation illusions or lead to disorientation. This may occur rapidly (reduced vision in brownout conditions) or inconspicuously (slowly deteriorating weather or night illumination). Many aircrew who unfortunately succumbed to SD had sufficient opportunity to negotiate the danger (or avoid the situation altogether), but instead continued until options were limited or nonexistent.

COMMON TERMS OF SPATIAL DISORIENTATION

9-3. SD is a pilot’s erroneous perception of position, attitude, or motion in relation to the gravitational vertical and the Earth’s surface.

ORIENTATION ILLUSION

9-4. A false perception of position or motion caused by discordant or erroneous sensory orientation information (or by failure to detect sensory information below one’s threshold of detection). Misperception of orientation cues (illusions) can lead to SD mishaps. This chapter outlines numerous such illusions. Knowledge of so-called ‘classic’ illusions is necessary but not sufficient. It is important to understand them because they are illustrative of human limitations and inherent deficiencies of sensory and perceptual systems within the flight environment. However, the absence of a ‘classic’ descriptive illusion does not discount or refute SD as a causative or contributing factor in a mishap or near miss. In fact, many pilots do not describe or recognize their SD events as classically attributable to those listed within this chapter.
SPATIAL ORIENTATION

9-5. A pilot’s correct perception, integration, and interpretation of aircraft position, attitude, and motion with respect to the gravitational vertical and the Earth’s surface.

OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT

9-6. A composite of conditions, circumstances, and influences that affect the employment of capabilities and bear on the decisions of the commander. Within the context of the aviation operational environment, it pertains to the conditions, circumstances, and influences that affect the aircraft, aircrew, and mission and bear on the decisions of the pilot in command or air mission commander.

SITUATIONAL AWARENESS

9-7. A comprehensive understanding or ‘mental model’ within space and time of the operational environment during mission execution. This integrated, timely, and ever-changing mental picture includes not only the comprehension of meaning but also anticipation and projection of near-future events of significance. Within the context of aviation, this may include subsets such as geographical situational awareness (SA) (navigation), spatial/temporal SA (attitude, altitude, airspeed, heading, and projected flight path), systems SA (status), environmental SA (weather), tactical SA, and others. Note that spatial orientation is a requirement of a comprehensive SA construct. The vernacular “loss of SA” may refer to the loss of one or more of these subsets but not necessarily SD. However, when one becomes spatially disoriented, he/she also loses SA.

DEGRADED VISUAL ENVIRONMENT

9-8. A state of reduced visibility whereby spatial situational awareness and aircraft control cannot be maintained with the same precision as in normal visual meteorological conditions. Examples of degraded visual environment (DVE) include brownout, whiteout, or degraded visual conditions such as fog, smoke, blowing dust, snow, heavy rain, sea spray, or low illumination. DVE may severely affect a pilot’s ability to maintain accurate aircraft orientation or control. Think of loss of aircraft control as the “what,” DVE conditions as the “where,” and SD as the “how” for a spatial disorientation accident.

Note. Think of loss of aircraft control as the “what,” DVE conditions as the “where,” and SD as the “how” for a spatial disorientation accident.

OPERATING IN DEGRADED VISUAL ENVIRONMENTS

9-9. Visual references and cues provide the most important sensory input for orientation in flight (70 to 80 percent of the orientation information in flight is acquired visually by some estimates). When flying instruments, for example, aircrew can train to ignore potentially erroneous vestibular or somatosensory inputs to “make the instruments read right.” When flying VFR, DVE reduces the critical ambient visual cues necessary for safe piloting. Aircrews may operate in DVE by maintaining sufficient visual references or instrument cues to understand their operating environment allowing for aircraft orientation and spatial/temporal situational awareness. At some level of restricted visibility however, the aircrew’s proficiency and experience will be insufficient to compensate for the reduced cues within the DVE, and the potential for an aircraft crash increases significantly.

PRECONDITIONS AND RISK FACTORS FOR SPATIAL DISORIENTATION

9-10. Comprehensive pre-mission planning and a thorough crew briefing can serve to mitigate the SD risk by avoiding the threat entirely or ensuring prompt, coordinated corrective action by the crew at the earliest development of SD. Comprehensive pre-mission planning save lives. Risk factors may include DVE, night operations or use of night vision systems, helmet-mounted displays, deteriorating weather conditions, unprepared or unfamiliar landing environs, task saturation, high workload, cockpit distractions, complex or dynamically evolving missions, stress and fatigue, and others. Combinations of these risk factors may have
synergistic effects. Some indicators may be readily and continually assessed during mission execution as a
gauge of conditions conducive to SD:

- Task saturation (especially “both heads in the cockpit”).
- Meteorological conditions conducive to DVE.
- Decreasing flight visibility and lack of visual cues.

9-11. Often preconditions conducive to SD can be forecasted by aircrew, and in-flight indicators can be
safely addressed by well-trained aircrew. Pilots in command and air mission commanders should assess the
combined effects of these preconditions and make appropriate risk management decisions to modify course
of action in order to mitigate the risk of SD.

WORKLOAD/TASK SATURATION AND SD

9-12. Maintenance of orientation is a deeply primal and instinctual response. When spatially disoriented (or
threatened SD), the unconscious physiologic response is to devote all resources to reorientation, often at the
expense of diverting cognitive resources and attention away from other tasks—so called “coning of
attention.” SD research has demonstrated that when disorientated, an individual’s ability to perform higher
level cognitive functions (executive function, decision making, computations, interpret visual displays,
perform sequential tasks) is severely degraded. In practical terms, as visual cues decrease, more mental
energy and resources will be devoted to trying to interpret/integrate cues to maintain orientation at the
expense of aircrew coordination and critical flight tasks. Fixation (on attitude indicator or a terrain feature),
unknowingly providing cyclic inputs, ignoring radio calls, or lack of aircrew coordination announcements
may all be casualties of this.

VISUAL CUES AND SD

9-13. Vision—both ambient vision with position and motion cues, as well as focal vision for identifying
flight parameters—is the primary means by which pilots maintain orientation. A number of visual
misperceptions (see below) may potentially induce SD. However, the absence of a visible horizon (or false
horizon) in combination with DVE and limited motion parallax cues is especially conducive to SD.

SPATIAL ORIENTATION AND RELATIONSHIP TO FLIGHT REGIME

9-14. Rotary-wing and FW pilots often experience SD differently owing to the degrees of freedom of
movement and predominant flight regimes. Airplanes require forward airspeed, while helicopters may
operate at a stationary hover or with hovering movement forward, laterally or aft in addition to forward
airspeeds. Aircrew should recognize that the types of visual and vestibular illusions likely to be encountered
will change depending on the phase of flight and must anticipate and adjust accordingly. With respect to SD,
the expanded flight regimes of helicopters can be thought of in two broad categories.

9-15. The first is the traditional model of forward cruise flight in which FW aircraft operate characterized
by somatogyral and somatogravic effects (see below) due to varying force vectors and turn rates generated by
flying in coordinated flight. Roughly 15 percent of Army SD mishaps occur in this regime of flight with the
most common illusions being the leans, false horizons, and G-excess illusion. The higher speeds and altitudes
associated with this mishap causal factor normally results in catastrophic loss of the aircraft and fatal injuries
to the aircrew.

9-16. The second is almost exclusive to RW aircraft operating at low airspeed, at a hover, or in transition
executing takeoffs and landings. This flight regime is notable for differing contributions of flight- generated
forces or resultant force vectors with respect to interpretation of the true gravitational vertical. Regardless of
pitch or roll attitude, the pilot generally senses the gravitational vertical corresponding with the true. For
example, low speed flight may be characterized by flat turns, stationary turns, hovering movements, yaw
inputs to align the aircraft with terrain and direction of movement, and others. About 85 percent of helicopter
SD/DVE mishaps occur in this flight regime with the most common being undetected drift (longitudinal,
lateral, and vertical) into an obstacle or ground, misleading attitude cues, and brownout.
SD and Human Factors in Digital Cockpits

9-17. Cockpit technological initiatives providing enhanced flight information, precise navigation, terrain obstacle avoidance, enhanced night vision systems, auto-recovery systems, tactile cueing, and other advances show promise in safety and enhanced SA and may be helpful in certain types of SD. Caution should be exercised in viewing technology as a panacea, however with potential associated SD risk factors of task saturation, “information overload,” high workload, distraction, and coning of attention. Aircrew may focus too much attention inside the aircraft interpreting information and managing systems and not sufficient attention (or division of duties) maintaining orientation and spatial/temporal SA.

Countermeasures and SD Mitigation

9-18. Effective SD countermeasures include the following:

- Understand the risk factors; anticipate and plan for the preconditions before flight.
- Employ good aircrew coordination. Pilots in command must establish a cockpit working environment that encourages announcement if an aircrew member is losing spatial orientation. Pilots in command must constantly monitor the factors conducive to the loss of orientation and manage the cockpit workload to prevent task saturation. Don’t keep two heads in the cockpit.
- Assess the mission’s geographical environment, forecasted weather and night illumination, and takeoff, en route, and landing conditions where DVE operations are likely to occur.
- Do not attempt visual flight below established weather minimums or in areas of deteriorating weather conditions.
- Maintain proficiency in instrument flight with emphasis on aircraft control through the use of flight instruments. If appropriate, initiate prompt inadvertent IMC procedures.
- Trust your instruments and make them read right.
- In the event of suspected or recognized SD, reference instruments with a good cross check and attempt to ignore conflicting sensory inputs. (Note that some sensations are extremely powerful and difficult to override.) In two-pilot aircraft, announce SD and transfer the controls.

Types of Spatial Disorientation

9-19. Instances of SD are divided into three types, based on an aviator’s awareness of and response to the SD.

Type I (Unrecognized)

9-20. In type I SD, an aviator does not perceive any indication of SD or necessarily think anything is wrong. What the aviator sees and feels—or thinks he or she sees and feels—may be corroborated by other senses. The aircraft might be performing normally with no indication of inconsistent or conflicting aircraft control parameters. Unaware of a problem, the pilot fails to recognize and counteract the SD, a mistake that often results in a fatal aircraft mishap. Type I SD is the most dangerous type of disorientation.

Type II (Recognized)

9-21. In type II SD, the pilot perceives a problem resulting from SD (but might not initially recognize it as SD). The pilot might feel the controls are malfunctioning or wrongly perceive an instrument failure. Although it may strongly conflict with perception, the pilot has the opportunity to correct attitude and flight path to re-establish aircraft control.

Type III (Incapacitating)

9-22. In type III SD, the pilot experiences such an overwhelming sensation of movement (or tilt) that he or she cannot physically orient using visual cues or the aircraft instruments. This may be exacerbated by overwhelming autonomic responses (such as sweating, heart rate changes, nausea, and other signs and symptoms) or by high-anxiety states that may result in “freezing on the stick.” Type III SD is not fatal if the
pilot can ultimately gain control of the aircraft, immediately transfer the controls, or initiate auto-recovery system (if available).

**ORIENTATION MAINTENANCE**

9-23. The visual, vestibular, auditory, and somatosensory (proprioceptive) sensory systems (figure 9-1) are especially important in maintaining orientation, equilibrium and balance. The combined functioning and integration of these senses occurs at basic neural levels in the brain which is why SD is often difficult to overcome with higher cognitive processing.

![Figure 9-1. The three equilibrium systems](image)

**VISUAL SYSTEM**

9-24. Of the three sensory systems, the visual system is the most important in maintaining the ability to orient and move in three-dimensional space. Overview of the visual system is covered elsewhere, but note that there are really two separate visual systems with different functions that must work in concert to prevent SD.

9-25. Ambient vision is primarily involved with orientation (the “where”). It involves large areas of the total visual field (including peripheral vision) providing position and motion cues to orient the human within the perceived environment. For example, in a degraded visual environment such as low illumination at night when only focal vision is available without ambient cues, a pilot may focus only on runway lights misjudging an approach.

9-26. Focal vision, as the name implies, uses only the central visual field (approximately 30-40 degrees visual angle), and is used for recognition and identification (the “what”). It is very important for identification of flight parameters and to provide information for situational awareness. For example, it provides the information derived from the flight instruments and helps to judge distance and depth. It is slow to adapt to low-light conditions, however, and requires conscious processing which is comparatively slower.

**VESTIBULAR SYSTEM**

9-27. The vestibular system can provide a relatively accurate perception of orientation and movement in space with the proviso that sensation occurs within the parameters of a force environment that indicates the true vertical. In other words, it may not be perceived as accurate at times within the complex, dynamic flight environment. The end organs are located within the inner ear, detecting motion and gravity. Each vestibular apparatus consists of two distinct structures, the semicircular canals and vestibule proper, which contains the otolith organs. Both the semicircular canals and otolith organs sense changes in motion and aircraft attitude.
The semicircular canals sense angular acceleration while the otoliths sense linear acceleration. Figure 9-2 depicts the vestibular system.

![Figure 9-2. Vestibular system](image)

**Otolith Organs**

9-28. The otolith organs are small sacs located in the vestibule. Hairs from the sensory cells sitting on the macula project into the otolithic membrane, an overlying, gelatinous mass that contains calcium carbonate crystals called otoliths. The otolith organs (figure 9-3) respond to gravitoinertial force (both gravity and linear acceleration/deceleration). For example, changes in head position relative to gravitational force cause the otolithic membrane to shift position on the macula due to inertia of the otolith crystals. The hairs then bend, signaling a change in head position.

![Figure 9-3. Otolith organs](image)

9-29. When the head is upright, the hair cells generate a “resting” frequency of nerve impulses (figure 9-4, page 9-7).

9-30. The resting frequency is altered when the head is tilted, and the brain is informed of the new position. The position of the hair cells when the head is tilted forward and backward is illustrated in figure 9-4 (page 9-7).
7-31. Linear acceleration and deceleration stimulate the otolith organs. The body (in fact, physics) cannot distinguish between the inertial forces resulting from linear acceleration and the force of gravity. Forward acceleration results in backward displacement of the otolithic membrane. When an adequate visual reference is not available, crewmembers might experience a false sensation of backward tilt (figure 9-5).
SEMICIRCULAR CANALS

9-32. The semicircular canals respond to angular acceleration (changes in angular velocity) and react to changes in roll, pitch, or yaw attitude. Figure 9-6 shows where these changes are registered in the semicircular canals.

Figure 9-6. Reactions of semicircular canals to changes in angular acceleration

9-33. The semicircular canals are situated in three planes (approximately perpendicular to each other) and filled with a fluid called endolymph. The inertial torque resulting from angular acceleration in the canal plane causes motion of the fluid. This fluid motion bends the cupula, a gelatinous structure located in the ampulla of the canal. This bending of the cupula causes the hair of the hair cells to bend in a specific direction exciting the vestibular nerve. These nerve impulses are then transmitted to the brain, where they are interpreted as rotation of the head. Figure 9-7 shows a cutaway section of the semicircular canal.

Figure 9-7. Cutaway view of the semicircular canal
9-34. When no acceleration takes place, the hair cells remain upright and the body senses no rotation. The position of the hairs and the actual sensation correspond, as shown in figure 9-8.

![Diagram of NO TURN and NO SENSATION vs. TRUE](image)

**Figure 9-8. Position of hair cells during no acceleration**

9-35. When the semicircular canal is stimulated during clockwise acceleration, fluid within it lags behind the accelerated canal walls. The lag creates a relative counterclockwise movement of this fluid. The cupula deflects in the direction opposite the fluid motion. The brain interprets movement of the hairs to be a turn, and the body correctly senses a clockwise turn is being made. Figure 9-9 shows the position of the hair cells and resulting true sensation during a clockwise turn.

![Diagram of ACCELERATING COUNTERCLOCKWISE TURN](image)

**Figure 9-9. Sensation during a clockwise turn**

9-36. If a clockwise turn continues at a constant rate for many seconds, the motion of the fluid within the canals catches up with the canal walls. At this point the hairs are no longer bent, and the brain receives the false impression that turning has stopped. A prolonged constant rate turn in either direction results in a
false sensation of no turn. The position of the hair cells and resulting false sensation during a prolonged clockwise turn is shown in figure 9-10.

Figure 9-10. Sensation during a prolonged clockwise turn

9-37. When the clockwise rotation slows or stops, fluid within the canal moves briefly in a clockwise direction. This movement sends a signal to the brain that is falsely interpreted as body movement in the opposite direction. In an attempt to correct the falsely perceived counterclockwise turn, the pilot might turn the aircraft in the original clockwise direction.

SOMATOSENSORY SYSTEM

9-38. The somatosensory system reacts to tactile and kinesthetic sensations resulting from forces or pressure on sensors in the skin, joints, tendons, or muscles, and from slight changes in the position of internal organs. The somatosensory system is closely associated with the vestibular system and, to a lesser degree, the visual system. It reinforces the dynamic components of the otoliths and influences the interpretation of other sensory signals through expectation. Recognition of these sensations by experienced pilots gave rise to the phrase “seat of the pants” flying, however the somatosensory system may be very unreliable in some instances.

ILLUSIONS

9-39. There are a number of so-called ‘classic’ illusions that are illustrative of many physiologic limitations within the dynamic flight environment. Remember, however, that just because an event does not exactly match that of a classic illusion does not necessarily discount or refute SD as a causative or contributing factor in a mishap or near miss. Many pilots do not describe or recognize their SD events as classically attributable to those listed within this chapter. Most illusions occur in a deprived visual environment where they cannot be countermanded by a clear view of the stable external world.

VISUAL ILLUSIONS

9-40. Piloting is inherently visual (both central and ambient), and the visual system is deeply intrinsic to orientation. On the ground, the visual world is Earth-stable. In flight (a dynamic force environment) there are significant changes in the interaction between the visual world and the force environment. Visual illusions give false impressions or misconceptions of actual conditions. Therefore, crewmembers must understand the types of illusions that can occur and resultant potential for disorientation.
9-41. Some illusions can result from misinterpreting what is seen; what is perceived is not always accurate. Even with references outside the cockpit and instrument displays inside, crewmembers must be vigilant to interpret information correctly.

**VECTION (INDUCED MOTION ILLUSION)**

9-42. Induced motion is falsely perceived motion of oneself when no physical motion is actually occurring. The most common example is vection—visually induced perception of self-motion. Consider the example of an individual in a car stopped at a traffic light and another car slowly pulls alongside. The individual stopped at the light may perceive the other car’s forward motion as his or her own rearward motion, resulting in the individual suddenly applying additional pressure to the brakes. Another common example is that of two adjacent trains whereby a passenger on one misperceives self-motion due to the movement of the other train. This illusion can be encountered during flight in situations such as formation flight, hover taxi, or hovering over moving water, blowing snow or dust, or movement of tall grass.

**FALSE HORIZON ILLUSION**

9-43. False horizon illusions occur when a pilot confuses a wide sloping plane of reference such as sloping cloud tops, mountain ridges, or so-called ‘cultural’ lighting at night (such as a coastline or highway) with the true horizontal (figure 9-11). A sloping cloud deck, for example, can be difficult to perceive as anything but horizontal if it extends any great distance in the pilot’s peripheral vision. The pilot might perceive the cloudbank to be horizontal even if it is not horizontal to the ground, and position the aircraft into a banked attitude thinking it is level. This condition is often insidious and may go undetected until the pilot recognizes it via cueing to instruments and makes necessary corrections. This illusion may also occur if the pilot looks outside after having given prolonged attention to a task inside the cockpit. Confusion can result in the pilot incorrectly placing the aircraft “level” according to the sloping cloudbank.

![Figure 9-11. False horizon illusion](image)

**CONFUSION WITH GROUND LIGHTS**

9-44. A related illusion, confusion with ground lights, occurs when a pilot mistakes ground lights for stars. The illusion prompts the pilot to place the aircraft in an unusual attitude to keep the misperceived ground lights above the aircraft. Isolated ground lights can appear as celestial lights, which could lead to the illusion the aircraft is in a nose-high or one-wing-low attitude (figure 9-12, part A; page 9-12). When no celestial lights are visible because of overcast conditions, unlighted terrain can blend with the dark overcast to create the illusion the unlighted terrain is part of the sky (figure 9-12, part B; page 9-12). This illusion can be avoided by referencing the flight instruments and establishing true horizon and attitude.
Figure 9-12. Confusion of ground lights and stars at night

HEIGHT-DEPTH PERCEPTION ILLUSION

9-45. Height-depth perception illusions are due to absent or insufficient visual cues and cause crewmembers to misjudge depth perception. Flying over areas devoid of visual references such as desert terrain, snow, or water may deprive crewmembers of their perception of height. Misjudging the aircraft’s true altitude, the pilot might fly the aircraft dangerously low to the ground or other obstacles above the ground. Flight in an area where visibility is restricted by misty rain, fog, smoke, whiteout, brownout, or haze can produce the same illusion.

CRATER ILLUSION

9-46. Crater illusions occur when crewmembers land at night under night vision device conditions and the infrared searchlight is directed too far under the aircraft’s nose. This combination creates the illusion of landing with up sloping terrain in all directions or landing in a crater. This illusionary depression lulls the pilot into continually lowering the collective and could result in the aircraft prematurely impacting the ground. If observing another aircraft during hover taxi, the pilot might perceive the crater is moving with the aircraft being observed.

STRUCTURAL ILLUSION

9-47. Structural illusions are caused by the effects of rain, snow, sleet, heat waves, or other visual obscurants. A straight line can appear curved when viewed through heat waves in the desert. A single wingtip light might appear as a double light or in a different location when viewed through rain. Curvature of the aircraft windscreen also can cause structural illusions due to the refraction of light rays as they pass through the windscreen. Pilots must remain vigilant to the potential for false perceptions when operating in environments containing these obscurants.

SIZE-DISTANCE ILLUSION

9-48. Size and shape constancy are important when a familiar object’s known size and shape is used to judge its distance from the observer. Size-distance misperceptions give rise to a number of related illusions whereby a crewmember misinterprets an object of unfamiliar size and shape by comparing it with what they are accustomed or familiar to seeing based on experience.
Size Constancy

9-49. A common example of a size constancy illusion is that of landing at an unfamiliar runway (figure 9-13). A runway that is narrower than expected may cause the pilot to think he or she is higher and further away resulting in the flying of the approach too low and land short. Likewise a wider runway than expected may cause the pilot erroneously to think he or she is closer resulting in flying the approach too high and land long.

![Size Constancy – Runway Width](image)

**Figure 9-13. Size constancy**

Shape Constancy

9-50. A related illusion is that of shape constancy which is commonly encountered with sloping runways (figure 9-14). A typical glideslope to landing of 3 to 4 degrees is such that only a one degree change in runway slope can affect the landing sight picture. With the shape constancy illusion, the foreshortened picture of an up sloping runway may give the pilot the illusion of being too high. A natural tendency is for the pilot to want to ‘reshape’ the sight picture resulting in flying the approach too low. The reverse is true for a down sloping runway. In both cases, being forewarned of the potential hazard with good pre-mission planning and cross-checking the visual VASI or PAPI lights would be important.

![Runway slope illusion](image)

**Figure 9-14. Shape constancy**
Aerial Perspective

9-51. Another size-distance illusion is that of aerial perspective. These illusions can occur if visual cues are of a different size or perspicuity (clarity and discrimination) than expected. A classic example would be for a pilot to mistake immature, short or stunted trees for large, tall ones causing him or her to misjudge altitude above the ground. A different but somewhat related phenomenon may occur in rain, smoke or haze, whereby a pilot may erroneously think that the lights of another aircraft or runway approach lighting to be much farther away than actual distance due to lack of brightness and clarity. Objects viewed within a hazy environment, for example, are often thought to be further away.

FASCINATION (FIXATION) IN FLYING

9-52. While not a visual illusion, per se, this can be just as deadly. Fascination or fixation in flying can be separated into two categories: task saturation and target fixation. Task saturation occurs when crewmembers become so engrossed with a problem or task within the cockpit that they fail to properly scan outside the aircraft. Target fixation, commonly referred to as target hypnosis, occurs when crewmembers ignore orientation cues and focus their attention on an object or goal. For example, an attack pilot on a gunnery range might become so intent on hitting a target that he or she forgets to fly the aircraft, causing it to strike the ground, target, or shrapnel.

AUTOKINESIS

9-53. Autokinesis occurs primarily at night when ambient visual cues are minimal and a small, dim light is seen against a dark background. After about 6 to 12 seconds of visually fixating on the light, an individual may perceive movement at up to 20 degrees in any particular direction or in several directions in succession, although there is no actual object displacement. This illusion can cause a pilot to mistake the fixated object for an object in motion (such as, another aircraft). In addition, a pilot flying at night might perceive a relatively stable lead aircraft to be moving erratically when, in fact, it is not. The unnecessary and undesirable control inputs the pilot makes to compensate for the illusory movement result in increased workload and wasted motion at best and an operational hazard at worst.

VESTIBULAR ILLUSIONS

9-54. The vestibular system provides accurate information on the ground, but is vulnerable to illusions in the dynamic flight environment—particularly in depraved visual environments—posing the threat of SD. Aviators must understand vestibular illusions and the conditions in which they occur.

SOMATOgyRAL ILLUSIONS

9-55. Somatogyrical illusions give the false sensation (misperception of direction or magnitude) of rotation and occur due to the semicircular canal’s inability to accurately register sustained angular velocity (prolonged rotation).

LEANS

9-56. The leans is a very common illusion that involves both semicircular canals and otoliths. Virtually every instrument rated pilot will experience it at some time when flying in clouds or reduced visibility (figure 9-15, page 9-15). It is an illusion of bank and occurs with a false sensation of angular displacement about the roll axis (sensation that aircraft is one-wing low). If the pilot were to roll into a bank in a slow subthreshold roll, he or she may fail to perceive the aircraft is no longer flying straight and level (although the attitude indicator will show a bank). Once the pilot detects the banked attitude, he or she may make a quick recovery to resume straight-and-level flight. However, in this case, the pilot may perceive that that aircraft is actually now banking in the opposite direction even though the attitude indicator shows level. Instead, the pilot should maintain straight-and-level flight as shown by the attitude indicator. Briefly transferring the controls to the other pilot is often helpful. In some instances, in an attempt to counter the falsely perceived banked attitude, the pilot may attempt leaning his or her body or head until the false sensation subsides. The important step is to ‘make the instruments read right.’
GRAVEYARD SPIRAL

9-57. The graveyard spiral, as the name implies, can be a particularly deadly illusion (figure 9-16, page 9-16). As an example, if a pilot enters a turn of moderate or steep bank angle and remains in it for several seconds, the semicircular canals (which respond only to changes in angular velocity, not constant angular velocity) will eventually reach equilibrium (no stimulus) and no motion will be perceived. Upon abruptly recovering from the bank, the pilot will undergo angular deceleration, which is sensed by the semicircular canals. He or she may have a strong sensation of initiating a bank in the opposite direction even if the flight instruments contradict that perception. If deprived of external visual references, the pilot might disregard the instruments and initiate control input against the falsely perceived turn, causing the aircraft to re-enter a spiral in the direction of the original turn. In this case, the pilot’s sensation may correspond with the desired attitude (level), but the aircraft is actually banked. If the pilot detects loss of altitude (due to the bank), he or she may elect to pitch up and add power which in this case only tightens the turn. Similarly, this illusion can also happen with an uncoordinated stall (spin).
9-58. These illusions may occur during prolonged turns of high sufficient angular velocity when a pilot makes a head motion away from the plane of rotation of the turn. When the pilot enters and remains in a turn, the semicircular canal corresponding to the geometric axis equalizes and the endolymph fluid no longer deviates or bends the cupula (figure 9-17, page 9-17).

9-59. If the pilot moves his or her head in a geometric plane different from that of the turn, the originally stimulated semicircular canal moves from a plane of rotation to a new plane of non-rotation. Fluid in that canal then slows, resulting in a sensation of turning in the direction opposite the original turn. The other canals are simultaneously brought within a plane of rotation, and fluid stimulates the cupulas. The combined effects of “cross-coupling” of canals may create a perception of motion within a new orthogonal axis (and may give rise to an overwhelming “tumbling” sensation). This is relatively easy to demonstrate in a rotating chair, and (fortunately) uncommon in flight. However, it may occur, for example, when a pilot makes an abrupt head movement to change a radio or transponder code while flying in poor visual conditions such as in clouds or at night.

Figure 9-16. Graveyard spiral

CORIOLIS ILLUSION
POST-ROLL (GILLINGHAM) ILLUSION

9-60. This illusion can manifest after a roll maneuver, usually in the absence of a visible horizon and ambient visual cues. In this instance, a pilot may initiate a roll rate into a coordinated turn, complete the maneuver, but then incorrectly provide control input to add additional bank in the same direction with the misperception of a decrease in bank or roll-reversal. This also sometimes called a “roll-after effect.”

SOMATOGRAVIC ILLUSION

9-61. Somatogravic illusions are caused when changes in gravity or linear acceleration stimulate the otolith organ which responds to gravitoinertial force (both gravity and linear acceleration/deceleration), not gravity alone. These generally result in a false sensation of body tilt as a result of the misperception of the resulting vector of the inertial and gravity as the true vertical.

9-62. An example of a somatogravic illusion occurs when otolith inertia during an aircraft’s linear acceleration (or deceleration) causes the otolith organ to sense a nose-high (or nose-low) attitude. During linear acceleration, the gelatinous layer that contains the otolith organ is shifted aft, resulting in a false perception that the aircraft is in a pitch up attitude. For example, a pilot rapidly accelerating during takeoff maintaining a forward acceleration of 1 G will displace the otolithic membrane rearward in nearly the same position as if the pilot’s head was pitched up 45 degrees. In a visual deprived environment, he or she may experience the desire to (inappropriately) correct for this illusion by pitching the nose of the aircraft downward.

G-EXCESS ILLUSION

9-63. Whereas a classic somatogravic illusion (above) results from a change in the direction of the net gravitoinertial force, a G-excess illusion results from a change in magnitude. The result is the similar—a sensation of body tilt—but occurs in an environment of sustained excess (>1) G. This may occur with a head movement in a steep turn. For example, if the pilot turns his or her head up to the inside of a steep turn at high G, the otolithic membrane may cause the pilot to misperceive the true amount of head and body tilt which is interpreted as an under bank. Miscorrecting for the illusion, the pilot may actually overbank the aircraft with inadvertent descent.

ELEVATOR ILLUSION

9-64. The elevator illusion is a type of G-excess whereby a false sensation of pitch may be experienced with the head in a neutral position with significant upward or downward acceleration such as in an elevator
beginning to ascend. A sudden increase in vertical G-force ($G_Z$) drives the eyeballs downwards, giving a sensation of climbing. A climbing sensation may occur during the increased $+G_Z$ force experienced during a coordinated turn which may lead to a sensation of descending during the subsequent rollout. Likewise, a pilot on a long descending approach who rapidly levels off may also experience the eyes driven downward. In this case, a sensation of climbing may ensure, and the instinctual response may be to pitch the nose down and re-enter a descent to compensate.

**OCULOARGRAVIC ILLUSION**

9-65. These illusions are visually analogous to the somatogravic illusions and occur under similar conditions. It is of particular relevance in helicopter operations. In this case, the illusions occur due to the misperception of movement of a fixed object (such as, instrument panel) relative to the pilot during change of direction of gravitoinertial force. This is likely due to reflexive desire to maintain visual fixation. Consider the example of an approach without useful visual frame of reference or visible horizon whereby a pilot may misinterpret the resulting gravitoinertial vector in a slowing helicopter in increasing pitch up attitude as a stable level, descending approach attempting to keep the landing target in the same position on the windscreen.

**ALTERNOBARIC VERTIGO**

9-66. Alternobaric or pressure vertigo, while not an illusion, deserves mention as the vertiginous sensation can often be intense but usually relatively short. Changes in atmospheric pressure can sometimes lead to vestibular dysfunction. This may arise from sudden changes in altitude, a middle ear equilibration maneuver (Valsalva or Toynbee), or pressure differences between the two ears. It may even come at critical phases of flight and can usually be mitigated by briefly transferring controls or allowing autopilot control, while waiting the ten seconds or so for the sensation to abate.

**INFLUENCE OF ALCOHOL OR DRUGS**

9-67. The totality of deficits and impairment due to alcohol and certain drugs is covered elsewhere. Intoxication problems with balance are well-known to most, but alcohol (less dense than water) also has a direct effect on the density differential between the cupula and endolymphatic fluid within the vestibular system once it has been absorbed through the blood stream. The effects of alcohol on the vestibular system may continue after the alcohol disappears from the blood stream. The deleterious effect may last for 48 hours (or more in some cases) with the clear implication that excessive alcohol consumption may require a much longer period than the typical 12-hour alcohol-free limitation after the last drink consumed due to residual effects on vestibular function. Likewise many drugs (both over-the-counter and prescribed) may have notable effects on the visual, vestibular, and somatosensory systems, notably sedating antihistamines, certain medications for anti-motion sickness, narcotic preparations, and illicit drugs.
Chapter 10

Oxygen Equipment and Cabin Pressurization

With the technological advances of today’s Army aircraft and the increase in operational requirements at altitudes exceeding 10,000 feet MSL, O2 equipment, and cabin pressurization are crucial. Without supplemental O2 and cabin pressurization, crewmembers are at increased risk of hypoxia, evolved-gas disorders, and DCS. This chapter explains cabin pressurization, O2 equipment, and their use in Army aviation.

OXYGEN SYSTEMS

10-1. Aircraft O2 systems consist of containers that store O2 in a gaseous, liquid, or solid state; tubing to direct the flow; devices that control O2 pressure and percentage; and a mask to deliver O2 to the user. Oxygen systems exist in many forms throughout the military, but the following equipment is used in Army aircraft.

GASEOUS OXYGEN

10-2. Aviator’s gaseous O2 is the most common breathing O2 found in Army aircraft. It is classified as Type I, Grade A, and meets MIL-0E military specifications. Gaseous O2 is 99.5 percent pure by volume and contains no more than 0.005 milligrams of water vapor per liter at 760mm/Hg pressure and 15 degrees Celsius. Gaseous O2 is odorless and contaminant free.

10-3. Oxygen used for medical purposes is classified as Type I, Grade B, and is not acceptable for use by aviators because of its high moisture content. Temperatures at high altitudes can cause freezing in the O2-delivery system and restrict O2 flow.

ONBOARD OXYGEN-GENERATING SYSTEM

10-4. The onboard oxygen-generating system is the primary method of O2 delivery for patients aboard the HH-60L/M Black Hawk. Use of this system reduces many of the potential hazards associated with gaseous high-pressure systems and offers the added benefits of simpler service and maintenance. The applicable aircraft technical manual contains specific onboard oxygen-generating system capabilities as well as defines cautions while utilizing the system.

STORAGE SYSTEMS

10-5. Army aircraft may utilize one or more types of O2 storage systems, classified as either gaseous low-pressure or gaseous high-pressure systems.

GASEOUS LOW-PRESSURE SYSTEM

10-6. Low-pressure O2 is commonly used during emergencies. This system’s breathing O2 is stored in yellow, lightweight, shatterproof cylinders with a maximum charge pressure of 400 to 450 pounds per square inch. The low-pressure system is not very effective because the volume of O2 that can be stored is limited. In addition, if system pressure falls below 50 pounds per square inch, the system must be recharged within 2 hours to prevent moisture condensation within the cylinders. If not recharged within this timeframe, the system must be purged before refilling.

GASEOUS HIGH-PRESSURE SYSTEM

10-7. The gaseous high-pressure system is in use aboard most Army aircraft with internal storage systems. Breathing O2 is stored in green heavyweight cylinders that contain a maximum charge pressure of 1,800 to
2,200 pounds per square inch. This system allows the safe storage of large amounts of O₂ to meet mission requirements of Army FW aircraft.

10-8. The H-2 bailout bottle is an example of a gaseous high-pressure system. The H-2 provides crewmembers with an emergency O₂ source should their aircraft O₂ system fail and also supplies O₂ to high-altitude parachutists during jumps. This system is automatically activated during an ejection sequence or manually activated by pulling the ball handle (“green apple”). The H-2 provides about 10 minutes of breathing O₂ and cannot be stopped once activated.

10-9. The helicopter oxygen system (HOS), pictured in figure 10-1, is a self-contained portable O₂ system that supplies O₂ to crewmembers on missions requiring O₂ at altitude. The HOS is tailored for use in the UH-60, CH-47 (forward or aft), and the UH-1 but can be used in other aircraft, although additional supply hoses might be required. Each HOS can provide 100-percent O₂ to six personnel for 1 hour at altitudes up to 25,000 feet MSL. Oxygen is stored in two tandem-connected storage cylinders that must be recharged by an O₂ servicing unit.

![Figure 10-1. Helicopter oxygen system](image)

**OXYGEN REGULATORS**

10-10. The flow of O₂ into a mask must be controlled whenever O₂ systems are used onboard aircraft. Two types of O₂ regulators, diluter demand and continuous flow, are currently used in Army aircraft.

**DILUTER-DEMAND REGULATOR**

10-11. A diluter-demand O₂ regulator fits better, wastes less O₂, and provides a higher percentage of O₂ than a continuous-flow regulator. A mask-regulator makes up the self-contained, quick-donning unit available to pilots who encounter cabin pressurization problems (figure 10-2, page 10-3).
10-12. During each inhalation, negative pressure closes the one-way exhaust valve in the mask and opens the demand valve in the regulator, thereby providing O₂ flow only on demand. The regulator can mix suitable amounts of ambient air and O₂ to prolong the O₂ source. When the diluter level is placed in the NORMAL position, the breathing mixture at ground level is primarily ambient air with very little added O₂. During ascent, an air inlet is partially closed by an aneroid pressure valve to provide a higher concentration of O₂. This inlet valve closes completely at 34,000 feet MSL, and the regulator then delivers 100-percent O₂. On descent, this process reverses.

10-13. The regulator can also provide 100-percent O₂ at any altitude when the diluter lever is placed in the “100-PERCENT O₂” position. The diluter level should be set on “NORMAL” for routine operations and placed on “100-PERCENT O₂” when hypoxia is suspected or prebreathing is required.

CONTINUOUS-FLOW REGULATOR

10-14. Continuous-flow regulators provide protection at altitudes up to 25,000 feet MSL and supply a continuous flow of 100-percent O₂ to the user. The three major types of regulators are manual, automatic, and automatic with manual override.

OXYGEN MASKS

10-15. The three O₂ masks primarily used in the Army aviation community are the passenger, MBU-12/P or MBU-20/P, and diluter-demand quick-don masks. The passenger mask is a continuous-flow device, while the MBU-12/P and diluter-demand quick-don masks are pressure-demand devices. The continuous-flow mask supplies the user with continuous O₂; the pressure-demand masks provide O₂ when the user inhales. Oxygen in the mask is then maintained at a positive pressure until the regulator pressure is overcome during exhalation.

PASSENGER OXYGEN MASK

10-16. The passenger O₂ mask found onboard Army FW aircraft supplies a continuous flow of O₂ to the user regardless of inhalation. The mask, pictured in figure 10-3 (page 10-4), plugs into receptacles within the passenger compartment.
Figure 10-3. Passenger oxygen mask

MBU-12/P Oxygen Mask

10-17. The MBU-12/P oxygen mask (figure 10-4) is available in four sizes: short, regular, long, and extra-long. To ensure a proper fit, crewmembers should wear a mask in the size that most closely matches their facial measurements.

10-18. The MBU-12/P oxygen mask consists of a silicone-rubber inner facial piece bonded to a hard shell to form a one-piece assembly. The MBU-12/P mask offers several improvements over previous masks, including greater comfort, better fit, and increased downward vision.

Figure 10-4. MBU-12/P oxygen mask

MBU-20/P Oxygen Mask

10-19. Used for flights up to 50,000 feet MSL, the MBU-20/P oxygen mask (figure 10-5, page 10-5) is available in four sizes: small narrow, medium narrow, medium wide, and large wide. The mask assembly allows for communication and integrates with HGU-series flight helmet assemblies.

10-20. The MBU-20/P oxygen mask consists of a hard shell, upper and lower strap assemblies, breathing hose, inhalation valve elbow, and inhalation and exhalation valves.
PORTABLE HELICOPTER OXYGEN DELIVERY SYSTEM

10-21. The portable helicopter oxygen delivery system is a mounted O₂ delivery system that is attachable directly to an aviator's survival vest and is intended for missions at higher altitude (figure 10-6). The PHODS is designed to deliver O₂ at 8,000 feet PA to the aviator and automatically de-activate when descending back below 8,000 feet PA. The delivery system can be used with nasal cannula or with a mask.

OXYGEN EQUIPMENT CHECKLIST

10-22. Since O₂ equipment can malfunction easily, it must be checked continually. Crewmembers must check their O₂ equipment using the appropriate checklist or technical manual.

CABIN PRESSURIZATION

10-23. The Army’s FW aircraft can fly at higher altitudes than crewmembers can physiologically tolerate. Cabin pressurization was developed to ensure the safety and comfort of crewmembers and passengers.
CABIN PRESSURIZATION SYSTEM

10-24. The most efficient method for protecting crewmembers flying at altitude is to increase barometric pressure inside the cabin so it is greater than ambient pressure outside. In high-altitude flight without pressurization, crewmembers require continuous use of O₂ equipment, which increases crew fatigue. Pressurization does have some disadvantages. Crewmembers encountering problems with cabin pressurization can suffer serious physiological impairment.

10-25. Because greater pressure must exist inside the cabin than outside, aircraft walls must be structurally reinforced to contain this pressure. This reinforcement increases design and maintenance costs and also reduces aircraft performance due to added weight and increased power requirements.

10-26. Cabin pressurization is achieved by extracting outside ambient air, forcing it through compressors, cooling it, and maintaining it at a given cabin altitude. Pressurization is maintained by controlling the amount of air allowed to escape in relation to compressed air. In a typical cabin pressurization system, controls sense changes in cabin and outside ambient air pressure and make adjustments necessary to maintain cabin pressure at a fixed pressure differential. This is determined by the difference between cabin and outside ambient air pressure. A cabin altimeter, usually part of the pressurization system, allows the pilot to observe cabin altitude and make required pressure changes.

10-27. On most aircraft, cabin altitude usually increases with aircraft altitude until cabin altitude has been reached. Barometric control maintains the cabin at that set altitude until the maximum pressure differential is reached.

10-28. From sea level to 20,000 feet MSL, a barometric controller modulates the outflow of air from the cabin to maintain a selected cabin rate of climb. Cabin altitude increases until the maximum cabin pressure differential of 6.0 pounds per square inch is reached. Thus, at an altitude of 20,000 feet MSL, cabin pressure altitude is maintained at 3,870 feet MSL.

10-29. The maximum pressure differential is maintained from 20,000 to 31,000 feet MSL (the service ceiling of the C-12U/U1); however, cabin altitude increases with aircraft altitude (figure 10-7). At 31,000 feet MSL and a pressure differential of 6.1 pounds per square inch, cabin altitude reaches 9,840 feet MSL.

Figure 10-7. C-12U/U1 cabin pressurization changes with altitude changes

10-30. The cabin pressurization selected for a particular aircraft is usually a compromise among physiological requirements, engineering capabilities, overall aircraft performance, and cost.
ADVANTAGES OF CABIN PRESSURIZATION

10-31. Cabin pressurization offers several advantages for aircraft capable of flight above 20,000 feet MSL. In general, pressurization—

- Eliminates the need for supplemental O2 equipment.
- Significantly reduces the occurrence of hypoxia and DCS.
- Minimizes trapped gas expansion.
- Reduces crew fatigue since cabin temperature and ventilation can be controlled within desired ranges.

LOSS OF CABIN PRESSURIZATION

10-32. Pressurization system failure and resulting decompression can produce significant physiological problems in crewmembers. Slow cabin decompression, while dangerous because of the slow and insidious onset of hypoxia, is not as physiologically dangerous as rapid decompression. Rapid decompression occurs when the fuselage or pressure vessel is compromised and cabin pressure equalizes almost instantaneously with outside ambient pressure.

10-33. The following factors control the rate and time of decompression:

- Volume of the pressurized cabin. The larger the cabin area, the slower the decompression time.
- Size of the opening. The larger the opening, the faster the decompression time.
- Pressure differential. The larger the pressure differential between outside absolute pressure and interior cabin pressure, the more severe the decompression.
- Pressure ratio. The greater the difference between inside and outside cabin pressure, the longer the time for air to escape and the longer the decompression time.

10-34. The physiological effects of rapid decompression range from trapped gas expansion within the ears, sinuses, lungs, and abdomen to hypoxia. Gas expansion disorders can be painful and might become severe, but they are temporary. Crewmembers might also experience DCS and adverse effects from cold and wind chill. Hypoxia, however, poses the most serious hazard to crewmembers; its onset can be rapid, depending on cabin altitude after decompression. An average individual’s time of useful consciousness is decreased by 30 to 50 percent following rapid decompression.

INDICATIONS OF RAPID DECOMPRESSION

10-35. The rapidity and altitude attained at time of decompression determines the magnitude of observable decompression characteristics. The earlier crewmembers detect a loss of pressure, the quicker they can take appropriate emergency measures to increase survival. The following observable characteristics indicate pressure loss.

Noise

10-36. A loud popping noise is produced whenever two different air masses make contact. This explosive sound is often called “explosive decompression.”

Flying Debris

10-37. Crewmembers must be aware of the possibility of flying debris during rapid decompression. The rush of air from inside to outside an aircraft is so powerful that unsecured items might be ejected from the aircraft.

Fogging

10-38. A sudden loss of pressure causes condensation and a resulting fog effect. Fogging is one of the primary characteristics of decompression because air at a given temperature and pressure holds only so much water vapor.
Temperature

10-39. A loss of pressurization causes cabin temperature to equalize with outside ambient temperature, significantly decreasing temperature inside the cabin. The amount of temperature decrease depends on altitude.

IMMEDIATE ACTIONS FOLLOWING DECOMPRESSION

10-40. All crewmembers and passengers must breathe supplemental O₂ after cabin decompression occurs. Reference the time of useful consciousness in chapter 2 to become familiar with how fast a response is needed for respective altitudes. The crew must also initiate immediate descent to an altitude that minimizes the physiological effects of pressure loss; it is recommended to descend below 10,000 feet MSL.
Appendix A

Hypobaric Chamber and Reduced Oxygen Breathing Device Flight Profiles

MEDICAL CLEARANCE

A-1. All personnel must have a current flight physical and DD Form 2992 indicating full flying duty or chamber duties before participating in any hypobaric chamber exercise.

PURPOSE OF HYPOBARIC CHAMBER TRAINING

A-2. The purpose of hypobaric chamber training is to safely demonstrate—

- Crewmember limitations associated with hypoxia at altitude.
- Effects of trapped gas on the body.
- Effects of hypoxia on night vision (rated crewmembers).
- Capabilities of O₂ equipment.
- Proper emergency procedures for hypoxia and rapid decompression (FW only).

CHAMBER PROFILES AND APPLICABILITY OF TRAINING

A-3. Figures below show the standard hypobaric chamber profiles executed at SAAM. For information regarding nonstandard profiles, contact the School of Army Aviation Medicine, ATTN: MCCS-WAD, Fort Rucker, Alabama 36362-5377.

TYPE IV

A-4. Procedures for the United States Army Type IV profile (figure A-1, page A-2) are as follows:

- Begin 30-minute denitrogenation.
- Perform 5,000-feet ear and sinus check by 5,000 feet per minute.
- Ascend main chamber from ground level to 25,000 feet by 5,000 feet per minute.
- Begin 5-minute hypoxia demonstration.
- Descend main chamber from 25,000 feet to 18,000 feet by 5,000 feet per minute for night vision demonstration.
- Descend main chamber from 18,000 feet to ground level by 2,500 feet per minute.
- Terminate chamber flight.
Figure A-1. Type IV 25,000-foot United States Army profile

**TYPE V**

A-5. Procedures for the United States Army/USAF Type V profile in figure A-2 are as follows:

- Begin 30-minute denitrogenation.
- Perform 5,000-feet ear and sinus check by 5,000 feet per minute.
- Ascend main chamber to 25,000 feet by 5,000 feet per minute.
- Descend main chamber to 15,000 feet by 10,000 to 12,000 feet per minute.
- Descend main chamber to 8,000 feet by 5,000 feet per minute.
- Ascend main chamber to 25,000 feet by maximum rate of ascent (not to exceed 10,000 to 12,000 FPM).
- Begin 5-minute hypoxia demonstration.
- Descend main chamber to ground level by 5,000 feet per minute.
- Terminate chamber flight.

*Note.* After conducting ear and sinus check, the lock will remain at ground level unless an emergency in the main chamber requires the lock to ascend in order to evacuate someone from the main chamber without aborting the main chamber profile.

Figure A-2. Type V (high altitude parachutist) profile
RAPID DECOMPRESSION PROFILE

A-6. Procedures for the military rapid decompression profile in figure A-3 are as follows:

*Note.* All personnel will remain inside the lock for the duration of this profile. No one will be inside the main chamber.

- Ascend main chamber to 12,500 feet by maximum rate.
- Ascend lock to 1,500 feet by 2,500 feet per minute.
- Perform rapid decompression.
- Equalize main chamber and lock at 8,500 feet.
- Descend main chamber and lock from 8,500 feet to ground level by 2,500 feet per minute.

![Figure A-3. Military rapid decompression profile](image)

ROBD PROFILE

A-7. Procedures for the ROBD are as follows:

- Ascend simulated altitude to 10,000 feet.
- Maintain 10,000 feet for a minimum of 1 minute.
- Ascend simulated altitude to 25,000 feet.
- Provide 100-percent O₂ treatment for hypoxia when either of the following occur:
  - Three symptoms have been experienced.
  - Five minutes have elapsed.
  - Minimum authorized blood O₂ saturation has been identified.
### Glossary

#### SECTION I – ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AGSM</td>
<td>anti-G straining maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Army regulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATM</td>
<td>aircrew training manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLP</td>
<td>ballistic limit protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEP</td>
<td>communications earplug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO₂</td>
<td>carbon dioxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA</td>
<td>Department of the Army</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCS</td>
<td>decompression sickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEATH</td>
<td>drugs, exhaustion, alcohol, tobacco, hypoglycemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVE</td>
<td>degraded visual environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOV</td>
<td>field of view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>gravitational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAP</td>
<td>high altitude parachutist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hg</td>
<td>mercury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂</td>
<td>hydrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂O⁺</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOS</td>
<td>helicopter oxygen system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICS</td>
<td>internal communication system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMC</td>
<td>instrument meteorological condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP</td>
<td>jet propulsion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LASIK</td>
<td>laser-assisted in-situ keratomileusis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFF</td>
<td>military free fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSL</td>
<td>mean sea level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N₂</td>
<td>nitrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ND</td>
<td>neutral density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O₂</td>
<td>oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH</td>
<td>potential of hydrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCO₂</td>
<td>partial pressure of carbon dioxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO₂</td>
<td>partial pressure of oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRK</td>
<td>photorefractive keraectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBC</td>
<td>red blood cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REM</td>
<td>rapid eye movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROBD</td>
<td>reduced oxygen breathing device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAAM</td>
<td>School of Army Aviation Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCUBA</td>
<td>self-contained underwater breathing apparatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>spatial disorientation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEL</td>
<td>short-term exposure limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TB MED</td>
<td>technical bulletin (medical)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECTION II – TERMS

absorption
A process in which an object collects other materials within itself. Two examples of absorption are a sponge absorbing water and the tissues of the middle ear absorbing oxygen from the middle ear cavity.

acceleration
A change of velocity in magnitude or direction expressed in feet per second squared, or fps². The most common accelerative force is gravity. The acceleration produced by gravity is a constant and has a value of 32.2 fps².

acclimatization
The physiological adjustment of an organism to a new and physically different environment. An example would be the adaptation of valley dwellers to life in a mountainous region where ambient pressures are relatively low. In this example, acclimatization would occur through a temporary adjustment in cardiac and respiratory rates and an increase in the number of red blood cells.

acute
An incident or disease characterized by sharpness or severity that has a sudden onset, sharp rise, and short course. In physiological training, this term usually describes a severe chamber reaction in which the onset is rapid and immediate aid is required.

alkalosis
The term used by physiological training personnel to refer to a respiratory condition in which there is an increase in blood’s basicity produced by abnormally rapid respiration and elimination of excessive amounts of carbon dioxide.

altimeter
An instrument used to measure the altitude of an aircraft or chamber. By making appropriate adjustments and pressure settings, the altimeter can be set to indicate the pressure altitudes used in chamber operations or the true altitudes used during most Army aircraft flights.

altitude sickness
In acute cases, the symptoms of hypoxia seen especially in flying personnel and individuals new to mountainous regions of high altitude; in chronic cases, the symptoms of hypoxia usually seen in individuals who have been at high altitudes in mountainous regions for long periods. Apparently, these individuals’ physiological compensatory processes for hypoxia become inadequate. Descent to lower altitudes usually brings relief.

alveoli
The saclike, extremely thin-walled tissues of the lungs in which the flow of inspired gases terminates and across the walls of which gas diffusion takes place between the lungs and blood.

ambient
The existing and adjacent environment. Ambient air pressure is the pressure of the immediate environment.

angular acceleration
Acceleration that results in a simultaneous change in both speed and direction.
anoxia
A total absence of oxygen in blood presented to the tissues or the inability of the tissues to use oxygen delivered to them. Anoxia is an extremely severe and morbid condition. The lack of oxygen with which physiological training personnel are concerned is, strictly speaking, hypoxia, not anoxia.

arterial saturation
The hemoglobin in arterial blood containing as much oxygen as it can hold, giving an arterial oxygen concentration of about 20 milliliters of oxygen per 100 milliliters of blood.

arteries
The blood vessels that possess relatively thick, muscular walls that transport oxygenated blood from the left ventricle to the body tissues. Arteries also transport poorly oxygenated blood from the right ventricle to the lungs.

arterioles
The smaller extensions of the arteries. The muscular walls of these arterial extensions are responsive to nerve and chemical control by the body and thereby regulate the amount of blood presented to the capillaries.

astigmatism
A visual problem caused by an unequal curvature of the cornea or lens of the eye.

atmosphere
The gaseous layer surrounding the earth that is composed primarily of oxygen and nitrogen.

attenuation
The amount of noise protection provided by a specific protective device. The attenuation of any given noise protective device is the number of decibels it reduces the total energy reaching the eardrum.

auricles (atria)
The upper two chambers of the heart, designated the right and left auricles. These chambers receive blood from the vessels and force it into the ventricles.

autokinesis
An illusion in which a single, stationary point of light seen against a dark background appears to move erratically. The illusion is probably caused by involuntary movement of the eyeballs because relative points of reference are missing.

barodontalgia (aerodontalgia)
A toothache that occurs during ascent to altitude or during descent. Causes for this painful condition include poor or loose restorations; presence of decay, infection, or abscess; or gritting of the teeth in times of stress.

barometer
An instrument used to measure atmospheric pressure based on the principle that the pressure exerted by ambient air is sufficient to hold up a column of Hg. The height to which this column is held varies directly with air pressure. The aneroid barometer operates on the principle that the volume of gas in a flexible, enclosed space increases when the pressure on it decreases; for example, during ascent to altitude.

barometric pressure
The pressure of air in a particular environment as measured by the barometer. For example, at 18,000 feet in an altitude chamber, barometric pressure should be 380mm/Hg.

barotitis media
A condition that develops when equalization of pressure in the middle ear cannot be accomplished during changes in barometric pressure.
bends
A form of decompression sickness that can be produced by the liberation of gaseous emboli (bubbles), primarily nitrogen, in body tissues. This condition is characterized by mild to incapacitating pains in the joints. Pain might be localized to a single area (for example, knee or joint) or generalized in severe cases.

blackout
Temporary blindness caused by an extinguished blood supply to the retina. Blackouts are usually seen during +Gz maneuvers. In such cases, force exerted on the column of blood traveling to the eyes reduces effective blood pressure in the vessels going to the eyes, thereby reducing blood flow to the eyes. If continued, the force will actually stop blood flow to the retina.

Boyle’s Law
The physical law that states the volume of a gas is inversely proportional to the pressure exerted upon it.

bronchi
The two main tubes leading to the lungs from the trachea. The bronchi are part of the conducting portion of the respiratory system.

bronchioles
The smaller tubules extending from each bronchus. Two types of bronchioles can be distinguished: the conducting bronchioles that provide the air passageway into the portion of the lungs where diffusion occurs; and the respiratory bronchioles that contain some alveoli in their walls through which the diffusion of gases occurs.

calorie
The amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water from 250 degrees Celsius to 260 degrees Celsius.

capillaries
The most minute blood vessels. Capillaries have walls of one-cell thickness. These vessels link the arteries and veins; through them, gas diffusion takes place between body tissues and blood.

cardiac arrhythmia
Any variation in the heart’s normal rhythm.

cataract formation
A clouding or opacification of the lens resulting from hardening that usually occurs during the aging process.

centripetal force
The force acting on an object moving in a circular pattern that holds the object on its circular path.

chemoreceptors
The receptors adapted for excitation by chemical substances; for example, aortic and carotid bodies that sense reduced oxygen content in blood and automatically send signals to the cardiovascular and respiratory systems to make necessary adjustments.

chill factor
The temperature decrease resulting from wind velocity. An increased cooling of exposed skin occurs when the skin is subjected to wind.

chokes
A form of decompression sickness that can occur at altitude and is believed to be caused by gases evolving in the lung tissue. This condition is characterized by a deep substernal pain or burning sensation, difficulty breathing, and nonproductive cough.

chronic
A continued or prolonged condition; for example, a chronic illness is an illness that continues for several years.
cilium
A minute, vibratile, hair-like structure attached to the free surface of a cell.

circadian rhythm
The rhythmic biological functions geared to an internal “biological clock.” Circadian rhythm affects processes such as the sleep-wake cycle, hormone production, and body temperature.

circadian desynchronization (jet lag)
Rapid travel from one time zone to another causes the body to resynchronize its diurnal rhythms to the local geophysical and social time cues. Until intrinsic rhythms are reset, sleep disorders and fatigue will prevail. Traveling eastward shortens the day; westward travel lengthens the day. Consequently, resynchronization occurs much more rapidly when traveling west. Shift work can produce effects similar to crossing time zones because of changes in light exposure and activity times.

circulation
Blood movement throughout the body.

coma
A state of complete loss of consciousness from which a patient cannot be aroused despite the use of powerful stimulants.

combustion
An act or instance of burning; a chemical process (as in oxidation) accompanied by the emission of heat and light.

conduction
Heat transfer between molecules of adjacent bodies or in a single body. Heat flows from a body or body portion with a lower heat content; for example, heat transfer from the hand to an ice cube. Physical contact is necessary for heat transfer by conduction.

cones
Nerve cells in the central portion of the retina, with the greatest concentration at the fovea. These cells are used for day vision and allow a person to see detail and distinguish between various colors.

conjunctiva
The mucous membrane lining the inner surface of the eyelids and covering the front part of the eyeball.

continuous flow
The earliest supplementary oxygen breathing system designed for use in aircraft, still used today in certain transport aircraft and for air evacuation. This system provides a constant flow of oxygen to the mask.

contrast sensitivity
The ability to detect objects on varying shades of backgrounds.

convection
A form of heat transfer effected by the flow of fluid across an object of a different temperature. If the object is warmer, the heat will transfer from the object to the liquid or gas; if the object is cooler, the heat will transfer from the liquid or gas to the object.

convulsion
A violent, involuntary contraction or series of contractions of voluntary muscles. Convulsions can occasionally be seen in hypoxic individuals or in people who have hyperventilated.

coriolis illusion
A condition that exists when the head is moved from one plane to another while the body is in rotation, causing an illusion of moving in a plane or rotation in which no angular motion exists.

cornea
The transparent part of the eyeball coat that covers the iris and pupil and admits light to the interior.
counter pressure
The pressure exerted on the outside of the body to balance the high pressure of gases in the lungs.

cyanosis
Blueness of the skin caused by insufficient oxygenation of blood. Blood that has most of its hemoglobin combined with oxygen appears bright red, whereas blood with low oxygenated hemoglobin appears reddish blue or cyanotic.

Dalton’s Law of Partial Pressures
The physical law that states the total pressure of a mixture of gases is equal to the sum of the partial pressures of each gas in the mixture.

dark adaptation
The process by which the retinal cells (rods) increase their concentration of the chemical substance (rhodopsin) that allows them to function optimally in twilight or in dimly illuminated surroundings. The process takes between 30 and 45 minutes in a darkened room.

deceleration (negative acceleration)
Any reduction in the velocity of a moving body.

decibel
An arbitrary unit for measuring the relative intensity of a sound.

decompression
Any reduction in the pressure of one’s surroundings. A chamber is decompressed each time it ascends.

decompression sickness
The effects produced by the evolvement of body gases or expansion of trapped body gases when ambient pressure is decreased, as in ascent to altitude.

denitrogenation
The reduction of nitrogen concentration in the body. Nitrogen concentration can be reduced by breathing 100-percent oxygen over a period of time. This process allows no new nitrogen into the body while existing nitrogen is removed from the body through the lungs eliminating much of the nitrogen dissolved in body tissues.

diffusion
The process through which a substance moves from a place of high concentration to a new location of lower concentration. An example is the diffusion of carbon dioxide from the tissue (with a partial pressure of 50mm/Hg) to blood (with a partial pressure of 40mm/Hg).

diluter-demand oxygen regulator
A supplementary oxygen delivery system in which a dilution of pure oxygen (with ambient air) is provided automatically to an individual with each inhalation. At 34,000 feet, the system automatically delivers 100-percent oxygen with each inhalation.

ejection
A method of emergency escape in which a pilot’s or crewmember’s seat is propelled out of the aircraft by an explosive catapult or rocket charge.

endolymph
The watery fluid contained in the ear’s membranous labyrinth.

erythrocytes
Red blood cells.

euphoria
A feeling of well-being.
eustachian tube
The passage leading from the middle ear to the pharynx. The eustachian tube provides the only means by which equalization can be maintained between pressure in the middle ear and ambient pressure during flight.

evaporation
The process by which a liquid changes to a gaseous state and, in doing so, increases its temperature. For example, when sweat evaporates (changes from a liquid to a vapor), it takes heat from the body and increases its own temperature.

expiration
The act of exhaling or breathing outward. Expiration usually involves contraction of certain abdominal muscles and relaxation of the diaphragm.

explosive decompression
A collision of two air masses that produces an explosive sound. A decompression that occurs in about 1 second or less is termed an “explosive decompression.”

external respiration
The movement of air into and out of the lungs, ventilation of the lung passages and alveoli, and diffusion of gas across the alveolar-capillary membrane.

flatus
Gas or air in the gastrointestinal tract.

frequency
The measurable characteristic of a noise that gives it a distinctive pitch, measured in cycles per second or hertz.

G-force (+Gx)
The positive accelerative force that acts to move the body at a right angle to the long axis in a back-to-chest direction.

G-force (–Gx)
The negative accelerative force that acts to move the body at a right angle to the long axis in a chest-to-back direction.

G-force (+Gy, –Gy)
The positive or negative accelerative force that acts to move the body at a right angle to the long axis in a shoulder-to-shoulder direction.

G-force (+Gz)
The positive accelerative force that acts to move the body in a headward direction.

G-force (–Gz)
The negative accelerative force that acts to move the body in a footward direction.

glare
A bright light that enters the eye and causes a rapid loss of sensitivity.

glottis
The vocal apparatus of the larynx.

gravity
The force of attraction between the Earth and all bodies on Earth by which each body is held to the Earth’s surface. The normal force that acts on all bodies at all times is 1 G.

headward direction
Movement toward the head.
heat
In the absolute sense, the motion of any substance’s molecules. The greater the motion, the higher the heat content. The heat content of any object is measured in calories.

heat cramps
A condition marked by sudden development of cramps in skeletal muscles. Heat cramps result from prolonged work in high temperatures and are accompanied by profuse perspiration with loss of sodium chloride (salt) from the body.

heat exhaustion
A condition marked by weakness, nausea, dizziness, and profuse sweating. Heat exhaustion results from physical exertion in a hot environment.

heatstroke
An abnormal physiological condition produced by exposure to intense heat and characterized by hot, dry skin (caused by cessation of sweating), vomiting, convulsions, and collapse. In severe cases, the body’s heat control mechanism can be disturbed, causing body temperature to rise to morbid levels.

hemoglobin
An organic chemical compound contained within red blood cells that combines with oxygen to form oxyhemoglobin. In this combination, oxygen is transported within the body.

Henry’s Law
The physical law that states the amount of gas that can be dissolved in a liquid is directly proportional to the pressure of that gas over the liquid.

hyperbaric chamber
A metal chamber, generally for human occupancy, pressurized to simulate the increased pressures found in underwater diving or to increase the partial pressure of inhaled oxygen such as for treatment of decompression sickness and carbon monoxide poisoning.

hyperventilation
An abnormally rapid rate of respiration that can lead to an excessive loss of carbon dioxide from the lungs, resulting in alkalosis. Hyperventilation is characterized by dizziness, tingling of the extremities, and, in acute cases, collapse.

hypoxia
Any condition in which the body’s oxygen concentration is below normal limits or in which oxygen available to the body cannot be used because of some pathological condition.

hypoxia (histotoxic)
Hypoxia caused by the inability of body tissues to accept oxygen from blood. An example of this type of hypoxia is cyanide or alcohol poisoning.

hypoxia (hypemic)
Hypoxia caused by a reduced capacity of blood to carry oxygen. Two examples of hypemic hypoxia are anemia caused by iron deficiency or a reduction in red blood cells, and carbon monoxide poisoning caused by carbon monoxide combining with hemoglobin, a condition that reduces hemoglobin’s oxygen-carrying capacity.

hypoxia (hypoxic)
Hypoxia caused by a decrease in the partial pressure of respired oxygen or the inability of oxygen in the air to reach the alveolar-capillary membrane due to conditions such as strangulation, asthma, and pneumonia. Hypoxic hypoxia is also known as altitude hypoxia.

hypoxia (stagnant)
A condition that results from blood’s failure to transport oxygen rapidly enough due to conditions such as shock or heart attack, in which blood moves sluggishly.

illusion
A false impression or misconception with respect to actual conditions or reality.
inertial force
Resistance to change in a state of rest or motion. A body at rest tends to remain at rest, while a body in motion tends to remain in motion.

inspiration
The act of drawing air into the lungs.

intensity
The loudness or pressure produced by a given noise, measured in decibels.

internal respiration
The transport of oxygen and carbon dioxide by blood and the diffusion of these gases into and out of body tissues. Internal respiration also includes oxygen use in metabolism and the elimination of carbon dioxide and water as waste products.

iodopsin
A photosensitive, violet retinal pigment found in retinal cones and important for color vision.

iris
The opaque, contractile diaphragm perforated by the pupil that forms the colored portion of the eye.

jet stream
A relatively narrow band of high-velocity winds located between 35,000 and 55,000 feet at approximate north and south latitudes of 30 and 60 degrees.

jolt
The rate of change of acceleration or rate of onset of accelerative forces.

lens
The portion of the eye located behind the pupil that focuses light rays on the retina.

leukocytes
White blood cells.

linear acceleration
Any change in an object’s speed without a change in direction; for example, increasing the speed of an automobile from 40 to 65 miles per hour while driving down a straight-and-level highway.

L-1 maneuver
A physiological maneuver that increases G tolerance.

mesopic vision
A combination of cone and rod vision used at dawn or twilight wherein both rod cells and cone cells are used but not to their maximum point of efficiency.

metabolism
The chemical changes in living cells by which energy is provided for vital processes and activities and new material is assimilated.

miosis
Contraction of the eye’s pupil.

otolith organs
The small sacs located in the vestibule of the inner ear.

oxidation
The act of oxidizing or state of being oxidized; to combine with oxygen. Chemically, oxidation consists of an increase in positive charges on an atom or a loss of negative charges.
**Glossary**

**oxygen flow indicator**
An instrument connected directly to an oxygen regulator that indicates oxygen flow through the regulator during a user’s respiratory cycle. This flow is manifested by the movement of shutters on the indicator’s face.

**pallor**
A paleness or absence of skin coloration.

**paresthesia**
A form of decompression sickness characterized by abnormal skin sensations; for example, itching and hot and cold sensations. Paresthesia can be caused by the formation of gas bubbles in the layers beneath the skin.

**partial pressure**
The pressure platelets exerted by any single constituent of a mixture of gases.

**photopic**
Vision in the daytime or in bright light in which the retinal cones are primarily used.

**pitch**
Rotation of an aircraft about its lateral axis.

**plasma**
The fluid portion of blood containing many dissolved compounds including proteins, carbon dioxide, bicarbonates, sugar, and sodium.

**platelets**
Disk-shaped structures found in blood and known primarily for their role in blood coagulation.

**presbycusis**
Hearing loss attributed to old age and the aging process in general. Presbycusis can be conductive or sensorineural in nature and is commonly referred to as “senile deafness.”

**presbyopia**
A visual condition that becomes apparent in middle age in which the eye’s lens loses elasticity, causing defective accommodation and an inability to focus sharply for near vision.

**pressure altitude**
Pressure expressed in feet of altitude. Pressure altitude can be obtained by reading the altitude indicated on the altimeter set at 29.92 in/HG (the standard datum plane).

**pressure breathing**
Breathing in which the gases respired are at a pressure greater than the ambient pressure. The normal respiratory cycle is reversed during pressure breathing; that is, inhalation is the passive phase of respiration and exhalation is the active phase.

**pressure demand**
A type of oxygen-delivery system (mask and regulator) that incorporates both the standard demand mechanism and a mechanism for delivering oxygen under a positive pressure. This process necessitates pressure breathing.

**pressure differential**
The difference in pressure, usually expressed in pounds per square inch, that exists between one or more objects or parts of the same object. This term also refers to a system of pressurizing aircraft cabins in which cabin pressure is kept uniformly higher than ambient pressure.

**pressure gauge**
An instrument used to measure the air or oxygen pressure in any given system. The dial on the gauge face indicates pressure within the system in pounds per square inch.
pressure suit (full)
   A specially designed suit that protects an individual by surrounding the body with a pressurized gas envelope.
pressurized cabin
   Any aircraft interior that is maintained at a pressure greater than ambient pressure.
proprioceptive system
   A combination of the vestibular, subcutaneous, and kinesthetic sensors that enables an individual to determine body position and its movement in space.
radial acceleration
   Any change in the direction of a moving body without a change in its speed.
radial keratotomy
   A surgical procedure that creates multiple, radial, spoke-like incisions on the eye’s cornea to produce better visual acuity.
radiation (heat)
   The transfer of heat in the form of wave energy from a relatively warmer body to a cooler body.
rapid decompression
   A sudden loss of pressure from an area of relatively high pressure to one of lower pressure. Conventionally, a decompression that occurs in 3 seconds or less is termed a “rapid decompression.”
red blood cells
   Blood cells that contain, among several other components, the hemoglobin necessary for oxygen transport.
redout
   A phenomenon in which individuals lose their vision (and sometimes consciousness). Individuals suffering from redout see nothing but red in their field of vision, often when experiencing –Gz. Redout is believed to be the result of engorgement of the facial blood vessels and movement of the lower eyelid over the eye.
relative gas expansion
   The number of times a given volume of gas will expand when the pressure surrounding it is reduced. Relative gas expansion is conventionally determined for body gases by dividing initial gas pressure by estimated final gas pressure. These pressures must be corrected for the constant water vapor pressure of 47mm/Hg at normal body temperature.
relative humidity
   The amount of water vapor in a given air sample at a given temperature. Relative humidity is expressed as a percentage of the maximum amount of water vapor the same sample could contain at that temperature.
residual volume
   The volume of air always present in the lungs.
respiration
   The process of pulmonary ventilation. Respiration involves gas diffusion between the lungs and blood, gas transport by blood between the lungs and body tissues, the diffusion of gas between blood and body tissues, the use of oxygen within cells, and the elimination of carbon dioxide and water as the cells’ chief waste products.
retina
   The sensory membrane that lines the eye and receives images formed by the lens. The retina is the immediate instrument of vision and connects to the brain via the optic nerve.
**Glossary**

**retinal rivalry**

The difficulty of the eyes in simultaneously perceiving two dissimilar objects independent of each other due to the dominance of one eye.

**rhodopsin**

A photosensitive, purple-red chromoprotein in the retinal rods that enhances night vision and is commonly referred to as visual purple.

**rods**

Nerve endings located in the retina’s periphery that are sensitive to the lowest light intensities. Rods respond to faint light at night and in poor illumination but cannot discern color or perceive detail.

**roll**

Rotation of an aircraft about its longitudinal axis.

**speed**

The magnitude of an object’s motion and rate of change. Speed is expressed as distance covered per unit of time such as miles per hour.

**velocity**

Speed in a given direction. Velocity describes the magnitude and direction of motion and is measured in distance per unit of time such as feet per second.

**vestibule**

The oval cavity in the middle of the bony labyrinth in the ear.

**yaw**

Rotation of an aircraft about its vertical axis.
References

REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS

RELATED PUBLICATIONS

ARMY PUBLICATIONS
Most Army doctrinal publications are available online: https://armypubs.army.mil.
FM 4-02.283/NTRP 4-02.21/ARMAN 44-161(I)/MCRP 4-11.1B. Treatment of Nuclear and Radiological Casualties. 20 December 2001.
TB MED 524. Occupational and Environmental Health: Control of Hazards to Health from Laser Radiation. 31 January 2006.
TC 3-04.11. Commander’s Aviation Training and Standardization Program. 03 August 2016.

OTHER PUBLICATIONS
Unless otherwise indicated, Standardization Agreements are available at https://nato.int.
PRESCRIBED FORMS
None

REFERENCED FORMS

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY FORMS
Unless otherwise indicated, DA Forms are available on the Army Publishing Directorate (APD) web site: https://armypubs.army.mil.
*DA Form 759. Individual Flight Record and Flight Crew Certificate-Army (Flight Hours).
DA Form 2028. Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms.
DA Form 3444. Inpatient Treatment Records and Dental Records (Orange).
Standard Form 600. Chronological Record of Medical Care.

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE FORMS
Unless otherwise indicated, DD Forms are available on the DOD web site: http://www.esd.whs.mil/DD/.
DD Form 2992. Medical Recommendation for Flying or Special Operational Duty.

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY FORMS
Unless otherwise indicated, Navy forms are available on the Navy website: https://navalforms.daps.dla.mil/web/public/forms
Navy Medical Form 6150/2. Special Duty Medical Abstract.
Navy Medical Form 6410/3. Completion of Physiological Training.

DEPARTMENT OF THE AIR FORCE FORMS
Unless otherwise indicated, Air Force forms are available on the Air Force website: http://www.e-publishing.af.mil/.
Air Force Form 1274. Physiological Training.
# Index

Entries are to paragraph numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>O</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acceleration</td>
<td>endolymph</td>
<td>orientation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>equilibrium</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bends</td>
<td></td>
<td>peripheral vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body</td>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemical balance</td>
<td></td>
<td>semicircular canals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupula</td>
<td></td>
<td>visual system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- A acceleration ................ 17
- B bends ......................... 17
- B body chemical balance ....... 5
- C cupula ......................... 17
- E endolymph .................... 17
- E equilibrium .................. 5, 16
- G graveyard spin ............... 16
- I illusions ..................... 1, 11, 17
- O orientation .................. 1, 5
- P peripheral vision ............ 11
- S semicircular canals ......... 15, 16
- V visual system ................ 5
This page intentionally left blank.
By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

MARK A. MILLEY
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:

MARK F. AVERILL
Acting Administrative Assistant
to the Secretary of the Army
1818302

DISTRIBUTION:
Distributed in electronic media only (EMO).